# Computer Architecture: A Constructive Approach

Using Executable and Synthesizable Specifications

# Arvind<sup>1</sup>, Rishiyur S. Nikhil<sup>2</sup>, Joel S. Emer<sup>3</sup>, and Murali Vijayaraghavan<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> MIT <sup>2</sup> Bluespec, Inc. <sup>3</sup> Intel and MIT

with contributions from

Prof. Li-Shiuan Peh, Abhinav Agarwal, Elliott Fleming, Sang Woo Jun, Asif Khan, Myron King (MIT);
Prof. Derek Chiou (University of Texas, Austin); and Prof. Jihong Kim (Seoul National University)

© 2012-2013 Arvind, R.S.Nikhil, J.Emer and M.Vijayaraghavan

## Acknowledgements

We would like to thank the staff and students of various recent offerings of this course at MIT, Seoul National University and Technion for their feedback and support.

# Contents

1	Intr	roduction	1-1
2	Cor	nbinational circuits	2-1
	2.1	A simple "ripple-carry" adder	2-1
		2.1.1 A 2-bit Ripple-Carry Adder	2-3
	2.2	Static Elaboration and Static Values	2-6
	2.3	Integer types, conversion, extension and truncation	2-7
	2.4	Arithmetic-Logic Units (ALUs)	2-9
		2.4.1 Shift operations	2-9
		2.4.2 Enumerated types for expressing ALU opcodes	2-12
		2.4.3 Combinational ALUs	2-13
		2.4.4 Multiplication	2-14
	2.5	Summary, and a word about efficient ALUs	2-16
3	Seq	uential (Stateful) Circuits and Modules	3-1
	3.1	Registers	3-1
		3.1.1 Space and time	3-1
		3.1.2 D flip-flops	3-2
		3.1.3 Registers	3-3
	3.2	Sequential loops with registers	3-4
	3.3	Sequential version of the multiply operator	3-6
	3.4	Modules and Interfaces	3-7
		3.4.1 Polymorphic multiply module	3-11
	3.5	Register files	3-12
	3.6	Memories and BRAMs	3-14

4	Pip	elining Complex Combinational Circuits	<b>4-1</b>
	4.1	Introduction	4-1
	4.2	Pipeline registers and Inelastic Pipelines	4-2
		4.2.1 Inelastic Pipelines	4-3
		4.2.2 Stalling and Bubbles	4-4
		4.2.3 Expressing data validity using the Maybe type	4-5
	4.3	Elastic Pipelines with FIFOs between stages	4-8
	4.4	Final comments on Inelastic and Elastic Pipelines	4-10
5	Inti	roduction to SMIPS: a basic implementation without pipelining	5-1
	5.1	Introduction to SMIPS	5-1
		5.1.1 Instruction Set Architectures, Architecturally Visible State, and Implementa- tion State	5-2
			5-2
			5-3
	5.2		5-4
	5.3		5-5
	5.4		5-13
	5.5	Separating the Fetch and Execute actions	
		5.5.1 Analysis	
6	$\mathbf{SM}$	IPS: Pipelined	6-1
	6.1	Hazards	6-1
		6.1.1 Modern processors are distributed systems	6-2
	6.2	Two-stage pipelined SMIPS	6-2
		6.2.1 A first step: a single rule, inelastic solution	6-3
		6.2.2 A second step: a two-rule, somewhat elastic solution	6-4
		6.2.3 A third step: a two-rule, elastic solution using epochs	6-5
		6.2.4 A final step: a two-rule, elastic, fully-decoupled, distributed solution $\ldots$	6-7
	6.3	Conclusion	6-9
7	Rul	le Semantics and Event Ordering	7-1
	7.1	Introduction	7-1
	7.2	Parallelism: semantics of a rule in isolation	7-1
		7.2.1 What actions can be combined (simultaneous) in a rule?	7-2
		7.2.2 Execution semantics of a single rule	7-5
	7.3	Logical semantics vs. implementation: sequential rule execution	7-7
	7.4	Concurrent rule execution, and scheduling rules into clocks	7-7

		7.4.1 Schedules, and compilation of schedules	7-9
		7.4.2 Examples	7-9
		7.4.3 Nuances due to conditionals	7-12
	7.5	Hardware intuition for concurrent scheduling	7-12
	7.6	Designing performance-critical ciruits using EHRs	7-14
		7.6.1 Intra-clock concurrency and semantics	7-15
		7.6.2 EHRs	7-16
		7.6.3 Implementing the counter with EHRs	7-17
	7.7	Concurrent FIFOs	7-18
		7.7.1 Multi-element concurrent FIFOs	7-18
		7.7.2 Semantics of single element concurrent FIFOs	7-20
		7.7.3 Implementing single element concurrent FIFOs using EHRs	7-22
8	Dat	a Hazards (Read-after-Write Hazards)	8-1
	8.1	Read-after-write (RAW) Hazards and Scoreboards	8-1
	8.2	Concurrency issues in the pipeline with register file and scoreboard	8-6
	8.3	Write-after-Write Hazards	8-7
	8.4	Deeper pipelines	8-7
	8.5	Conclusion	8-8
9	Bra	nch Prediction	9-1
9	9.1	Introduction	<b>9-1</b>
	9.2	Static Branch Prediction	9-2
	9.3	Dynamic Branch Prediction	9-3
	9.4	A first attempt at a better Next-Address Predictor (NAP)	9-5
	9.5	An improved BTB-based Next-Address Predictor	9-6
	0.0	9.5.1 Implementing the Next-Address Predictor	9-6
	9.6	Incorporating the BTB-based predictor in the 2-stage pipeline	9-8
	9.7	Direction predictors	9-9
	9.8	Incorporating multiple predictors into the pipeline	
			9-12
	9.9		9-15
10	Exc	eptions 1	.0-1
		* 	10-1
			10-2
		· -	10-2
	10.3		10-3
		· ·	10-3
			10-3
	10.4		10-5
			10-8

11 Caches	11-1
11.1 Introduction	11-1
11.2 Cache organizations	11-4
11.2.1 Replacement policies	11-6
11.2.2 Blocking and Non-blocking caches	11-6
11.3 A Blocking Cache Design	11-7
11.4 Integrating caches into the processor pipeline	11-10
11.5 A Non-blocking cache for the Instruction Memory (Read-Only)	11-11
11.5.1 Completion Buffers	11-13
11.6 Conclusion	-
	11 10
12 Virtual Memory	12-1
12.1 Introduction	12-1
12.2 Different kinds of addresses	12-2
12.3 Paged Memory Systems	12-2
12.4 Page Tables	12-4
12.5 Address translation and protection using TLBs	12-5
12.6 Variable-sized pages	12-7
12.7 Handling TLB misses	12-9
12.8 Handling Page Faults	12-10
12.9 Recursive Page Faults	12-11
12.10Integating Virtual Memory mechanisms ino the processor pipeline	12-12
12.11Conclusion	12-14
13 Future Topics	13-1
13.1 Asynchronous Exceptions and Interrupts	13-1
13.2 Out-of-order pipelines	13-1

13.6 Simultaneous Multithreading ..... 13-2

AS	A SMIPS Reference SI	
A	.1 Basic Architecture	SMIPS-2
A	.2 System Control Coprocessor (CP0)	SMIPS-3
	A.2.1 Test Communication Registers	SMIPS-3
	A.2.2 Counter/Timer Registers	SMIPS-3
	A.2.3 Exception Processing Registers	SMIPS-4
A	.3 Addressing and Memory Protection	SMIPS-6
A	.4 Reset, Interrupt, and Exception Processing	SMIPS-7
	A.4.1 Reset	SMIPS-7
	A.4.2 Interrupts	SMIPS-7
	A.4.3 Synchronous Exceptions	SMIPS-8
A	.5 Instruction Semantics and Encodings	SMIPS-9
	A.5.1 Instruction Formats	SMIPS-9
	A.5.2 Instruction Categories	SMIPS-10
	A.5.3 SMIPS Variants	SMIPS-15
	A.5.4 Unimplemented Instructions	SMIPS-15
A	.6 Instruction listing for SMIPS	SMIPS-16

## Bibliography

BIB-1

# Chapter 1

# Introduction

This book is intended as an introductory course in Computer Architecture (or Computer Organization, or Computer Engineering) for undergraduate students who have had a basic introduction to circuits and digital electronics. This book employs a *constructive approach*, i.e., all concepts are explained with machine descriptions that transparently describe architecture and that can be synthesized to real hardware (for example, they can actually be run on FPGAs). Further, these descriptions will be very modular, enabling experimentation with alternatives.

Computer Architecture has traditionally been taught with schematic diagrams and explanatory text. Diagrams describe general structures, such as ALUs, pipelines, caches, virtual memory mechanisms, and interconnects, or specific examples of historic machines, such as the CDC 6600, Cray-1 (recent machines are usually proprietary, meaning the details of their structure may not be publicly available). These diagrams are accompanied by lectures and texts explaining principles of operation. Small quantitative exercises can be done by hand, such as measuring cache hit rates for various cache organizations on small synthetic instruction streams.

In 1991, with the publication of the classic Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach by Hennessy and Patterson [4] (the Fith Edition was published in 2011), the pedagogy changed from such almost anecdotal descriptions to serious scientific, quantitative evaluation. They firmly established the idea that architectural proposals cannot be evaluated in the abstract, or on toy examples; they must be measured running real programs (applications, operating systems, databases, web servers, etc.) in order properly to evaluate the engineering trade-offs (cost, performance, power, and so on). Since it has typically not been feasible (due to lack of time, funds and skills) for students and researchers actually to build the hardware to test an architectural proposal, this evaluation has typically taken the route of simulation, i.e., writing a program (say in in C or C++) that simulates the architecture in question. Most of the papers in leading computer architecture conferences are supported by data gathered this way.

Unfortunately, there are several problems with simulators written in traditional programming languages like C and C++. First, it is very hard to write an accurate model of complex hardware. Computer system hardware is massively parallel (at the level of registers, pipeline stages, etc.); the parallelism is very fine-grain (at the level of individual bits and clock cycles); and the parallelism is quite heterogeneous (thousands of dissimilar activities). These features are not easy to express in traditional programming languages, and simulators that try to model these features end up as very complex programs. Further, in a simulator it is too easy, without realizing it, to code actions that are unrealistic or infeasible in real hardware, such as instantaneous, simultaneous access to a global piece of state from distributed parts of the architecture. Finally, these simulators are very far removed from representing any kind of formal specification of an architecture, which would be useful for both manual and automated reasoning about correctness, performance, power, equivalence, and so on. A formal semantics of the interfaces and behavior of architectural components would also benefit constructive experimentation, where one could more easily subtract, replace and add architectural components in a model in order to measure their effectiveness.

Of course, to give confidence in hardware feasibility, one could write a simulator in the synthesizable subset of a Hardware Description Language (HDL) such as Verilog, VHDL, or the RTL level of SystemC. Unfortunately, these are very low level languages compared to modern programming languages, requiring orders of magnitude more effort to develop, evolve and maintain simulators; they are certainly not good vehicles for experimentation. And, these languages also lack any useful notion of formal semantics.

In this book we pursue a recently available alternative. The BSV language is a highlevel, fully synthesizable hardware description language with a strong formal semantic basis [1, 2, 7]. It is very suitable for describing architectures precisely and succinctly, and has all the conveniences of modern advanced programming languages such as expressive user-defined types, strong type checking, polymorphism, object orientation and even higher order functions during static elaboration.

BSV's behavioral model is based on Guarded Atomic Actions (or atomic transactional "rules"). Computer architectures are full of very subtle issues of concurrency and ordering, such as dealing correctly with data hazards or multiple branch predictors in a processor pipeline, or distributed cache coherence in scalable multiprocessors. BSV's formal behavioral model is one of the best vehicles with which to study and understand such topics (it seems also to be the computational model of choice in several other languages and tools for formal specification and analysis of complex hardware systems).

Modern hardware systems-on-a-chip (SoCs) have so much hardware on a single chip that it is useful to conceptualize them and analyze them as *distributed systems* rather than as globally synchronous systems (the traditional view), i.e., where architectural components are loosely coupled and communicate with messages, instead of attempting instantaneous access to global state. Again, BSV's formal semantics are well suited to this flavor of models.

The ability to describe hardware module interfaces formally in BSV facilitates creating reusable architectural components that enables quick experimentation with alternatives structures, reinforcing the "constructive approach" mentioned in this book's title.

Architectural models written in BSV are fully executable. They can be simulated in the Bluesim<sup>TM</sup> simulator; they can be synthesized to Verilog and simulated on a Verilog simulator; and they can be further synthesized to run on FPGAs, as illustrated in Fig. 1.1. This last capability is not only excellent for validating hardware feasibility of the models, but it also enables running *much bigger programs* on the models, since FPGA-based execution can be 3 to 4 *orders of magnitude* faster than simulation. Students are also very excited to see their designs actually running on real FPGA hardware.

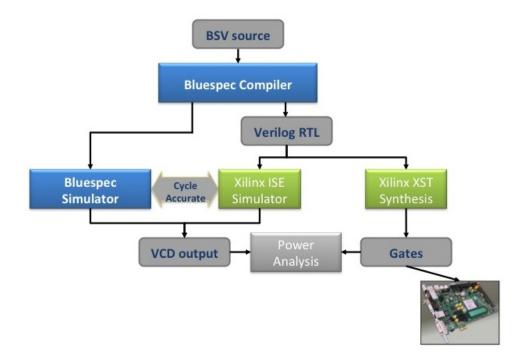


Figure 1.1: Tool flow for executing the models in this book

In this book, intended as a first course in Computer Architecture for undergraduates, we will go through a series of traditional topics: combinational circuits, pipelines, unpipelined processors, processor pipelines of increasing depth, control speculation (branch prediction), data hazards, exceptions, caches, virtual memory, and so on. We will be writing BSV code for every topic explored. At every stage the student is encouraged to run the models at least in simulation, but preferably also on FPGAs. By the end of the course students will design six or more different computers of increasing complexity and performance, and they will quantitatively evaluate the performance of their C programs compiled and running on these machines. Codes will be written in a modular way so students can experiment by easily removing, replacing or adding components or features. Along the way, we will delve deeply into complex issues of concurrency and ordering so that the student has a more rigorous framework in which to think about these questions and create new solutions.

# Chapter 2

# **Combinational circuits**

Combinational circuits are just acyclic interconnections of gates such as AND, OR, NOT, XOR, NAND, and NOR. In this chapter, we will describe the design of some Arithmetic-Logic Units (ALUs) built out of pure combinational circuits. These are the core "processing" circuits in a processor. Along the way, we will also introduce some BSV notation, types and type checking.

#### A simple "ripple-carry" adder 2.1

Our goal is to build an adder that takes two w-bit input integers and produces a w-bit output integer plus a "carry" bit (typically, w = 32 or 64 in modern processors). First we need a building block called a "full adder" whose inputs are the two  $j^{th}$  bits of the two inputs, along with the "carry" bit from the addition of the lower-order bits (up to the  $j-1^{th}$ bit). Its outputs are  $i^{th}$  bit of the result, along with the carry bit up to this point. Its functionality is specified by a classical "truth table":

Inputs			Outpu	ts
a	b	c_in	c_out	$\mathbf{S}$
0	0	0	0	0
0	1	0	0	1
1	0	0	0	1
1	1	0	1	0
0	0	1	0	1
0	1	1	1	0
1	0	1	1	0
1	1	1	1	1

We can implement this in a circuit, expressed in BSV (almost) as follows:

```
___ Full Adder (not quite proper BSV code)
```

```
function fa (a, b, c_in);
1
      s = (a ^ b) ^ c_in;
```

```
2
```

```
c_out = (a & b) | (c_in & (a ^ b));
3
```

```
return {c_out, s};
4
```

```
endfunction
5
```

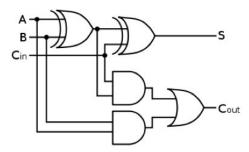


Figure 2.1: Full adder circuit

In BSV, as in C, the &, | and  $\hat{}$ , symbols stand for the AND, OR, and XOR (exclusive OR) functions on bits. The circuit it describes is shown in Fig. 2.1, which is in some sense just a pictorial depiction of the code.

A note about common sub-expressions: the code has two instances of the expression (a ^ b) (on lines 2 and 3), but the circuit shows just one such gate (top-left of the circuit), whose output is fed to two places. Conversely, the circuit could have been drawn with two instances of the gate, or the expression-sharing could have been suggested explicitly in the BSV code:

Common sub-expressions

1	
2	$tmp = (a \hat{b});$
3	s = tmp ^ c_in;
4	c_out = (a & b)   (c_in & tmp);
5	

From a functional point of view, these differences are irrelevant, since they all implement the same truth table. From an implementation point of view it is quite relevant, since a shared gate occupies less silicon but drives a heavier load. However, we do not worry about this issue at all when writing BSV code because the Bluespec compiler *bsc* performs extensive and powerful identification and unification of common-sub-expressions, no matter how you write it. Such sharing is almost always good for implementation. Very occasionally, considerations of high fan-out and long wire-lengths may dictate otherwise; BSV has ways of specifying this, if necessary. (end of note)

The code above is not quite proper BSV, because we have not yet declared the types of the arguments, results and intermediate variables. Here is a proper BSV version of the code:

```
Full Adder (with types)

function Bit#(2) fa (Bit#(1) a, Bit#(1) b, Bit#(1) c_in);

Bit#(1) s = (a ^ b) ^ c_in;

Bit#(1) c_out = (a & b) | (c_in & (a ^ b));

return {c_out,s};

endfunction
```

BSV is a strongly typed language, following modern practice for robust, scalable programming. All expressions (including variables, functions, modules and interfaces) have unique types, and the compiler does extensive type checking to ensure that all operations have meaningful types. In the above code, we've declared the types of all arguments and the two intermediate variables as Bit#(1), i.e., a 1-bit value. The result type of the function has been declared Bit#(2), a 2-bit value. The expression  $\{c_out,s\}$  represents a concatenation of bits. The type checker ensures that all operations are meaningful, i.e., that the operand and result types are proper for the operator (for example, it would be meaningless to apply the square root function to an Ethernet header packet!).

BSV also has extensive *type deduction* or *type inference*, by which it can fill in types omitted by the user. Thus, the above code could also have been written as follows:

```
Full Adder (with some omitted types) _____
function Bit#(2) fa (Bit#(1) a, Bit#(1) b, Bit#(1) c_in);
let s = (a ^ b) ^ c_in;
let c_out = (a & b) | (c_in & (a ^ b));
return {c_out,s};
endfunction
```

The keyword let indicates that we would like the compiler to work out the types for us. For example, knowing the types of a, b and  $c_in$ , and knowing that the  $\hat{}$  operator takes two w-bit arguments to return a w-bit result, the compiler can deduce that s has type Bit#(1).

Type-checking in BSV is much stronger than in languages like C and C++. For example, one can write an assignment statement in C or C++ that adds a char, a short, a long and a long long and assign the result to a short variable. During the additions, the values are silently "promoted" to longer values and, during the assignment, the longer value is silently truncated to fit in the shorter container. The promotion may be done using zero-extension or sign-extension, depending on the types of the operands. This kind of silent type "casting" (with no visible type checking error) is the source of many subtle bugs; even C/C++ experts are often surprised by it. In hardware design, these errors are magnified by the fact that, unlike C/C++, we are not just working with a few fixed sizes of values (1, 2, 4 and 8 bytes) but with arbitrary bit widths in all kinds of combinations. Further, to minimize hardware these bit sizes are often chosen to be just large enough for the job, and so the chances of silent overlow and truncation are greater. In BSV, type casting is never silent, it must be explicitly stated by the user.

#### 2.1.1 A 2-bit Ripple-Carry Adder

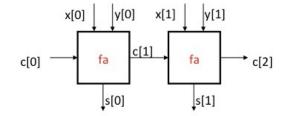


Figure 2.2: 2-bit Ripple Carry Adder circuit

We now use our Full Adder as a black box for our next stepping stone towards a w-bit ripple-carry adder: a 2-bit ripple-carry adder. The circuit is shown in Fig. 2.2, and it is described by the following BSV code.

```
2-bit Ripple Carry Adder
    function Bit#(3) add(Bit#(2) x, Bit#(2) y, Bit#(1) c0);
1
        Bit#(2) s;
\mathbf{2}
        Bit#(3) c = \{?, c0\};
3
4
        let cs0 = fa(x[0], y[0], c[0]);
\mathbf{5}
        c[1] = cs0[1]; s[0] = cs0[0];
6
7
        let cs1 = fa(x[1], y[1], c[1]);
8
        c[2] = cs1[1]; s[1] = cs1[0];
9
10
        return \{c[2],s\};
11
    endfunction
12
```

Here, x and y represent the two 2-bit inputs, and c0 the input carry bit. The notation x[j] represents its  $j^{th}$  bit, with the common convention that j = 0 is the least significant bit. We declare a 2-bit value s and a 3-bit value c to hold some intermediate values. The latter is initialized to the value of the expression  $\{?, c0\}$ . This is a bit-concatenation of two values, one that is left unspecified, and c0. The compiler can deduce that the unspecified value must be of type Bit#(2), since the whole expression must have type Bit#(3) and c0 has type Bit#(1).

In BSV, the expression ? represents an unspecified or "don't care" value, leaving it up to the compiler to choose. Here we leave it unspecified since we're going to set the values in the subsequent code. Similarly, the initial value of  $\mathbf{s}$  is also unspecified by not even providing an initializer.

A full adder instance is applied to the two lower bits of x and y and the input carry bit producing 2 bits, cs0. We assign its bits into c[1] and s[0]. A second full adder instance is applied to the two upper bits of x and y and the carry bit of cs0 to produce 2 bits, cs1. Again, we capture those bits in c[2] and s[1]. Finally, we construct the 3-bit result from c[2] and s. The type checker will be happy with this bit-concatenation since the widths add up correctly.

The types Bit#(1), Bit#(2), Bit#(3) etc. are instances of a more general type Bit#(n), where n is a "type variable". Such types are variously called *parameterized types*, *polymorphic types*, or *generic types*, because they represent a class of types, corresponding to each possible concrete instantiation of the type variable.

We are now ready to generalize our 2-bit ripple-carry adder to a w-bit ripple-carry adder. The circuit is shown in Fig. 2.3, and the BSV code is shown below.

```
w-bit Ripple Carry Adder (almost correct) _____
function Bit#(w+1) addN (Bit#(w) x, Bit#(w) y, Bit#(1) c0);
Bit#(w) s;
Bit#(w+1) c = {?, c0};
for(Integer i=0; i<w; i=i+1) begin</pre>
```

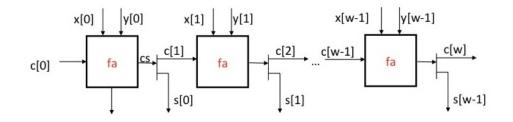


Figure 2.3: w-bit Ripple Carry Adder circuit

```
5 let cs = fa (x[i],y[i],c[i]);
6 c[i+1] = cs[1]; s[i] = cs[0];
7 end
8 return {c[w],s};
9 endfunction
```

The previous 2-bit adder can be seen as an explicit unrolling of this loop with w = 2. Now this generic *w*-bit adder can be instantiated as adders of specific sizes. For example:

```
w-bit Ripple Carry Adder ()
function Bit#(33) add32 (Bit#(32) x, Bit#(32) y, Bit#(1) c0)
a addN (x,y,c0);
function Bit#(4) add3 (Bit#(3) x, Bit#(3) y, Bit#(1) c0)
a addN (x,y,c0);
```

This defines add32 and add3 on 32-bit and 3-bit values, respectively. In each case the specific function just calls addN, but type deduction will fix the value of w for that instance, and type checking will verify that the output width is 1 more than the input width.

We will now correct a small notational issue with the addN function given above, having to do with numeric type notations. The BSV compiler, like most compilers, is composed of several distinct phases such as parsing, type checking, static elaboration, analysis and optimization, and code generation. Type checking must analyze, verify and deduce numerical relationships, such as the bit widths in the example above. However, we cannot have arbitrary arithmetic in this activity since we want type-checking to be feasible and efficient (arbitrary arithmetic would make it undecidable). Thus, the numeric calculations performed by the type checker are in a separate, limited universe, and should not be confused with ordinary arithmetic on values.

In the type expressions Bit#(1), Bit#(3), Bit#(33), the literals 1, 3, 33, are in the type universe, not the ordinary value universe, even though we use the same syntax as ordinary numeric values. The context will always make this distinction clear—numeric literal types only occur in type expressions, and numeric literal values only occur in ordinary value expressions. Similarly, it should be clear that a type variable like w in a type expression Bit#(w) can only stand for a numeric type, and never a numeric value.

Since type checking (including type deduction) occurs before anything else, type values are known to the compiler before it analyses any piece of code. Thus, it is possible to take numeric type values from the types universe into the ordinary value universe, and use them there (but not vice versa). The bridge is a built-in pseudo-function called valueOf(n). Here, n is a numeric type expression, and the value of the function is an ordinary Integer value equivalent to the number represented by that type.

Numeric type expressions can also be manipulated by numeric type operators like TAdd#(t1,t2) and TMul#(t1,t2), corresponding to addition and subtraction, respectively (other available operators include min, max, exponentiation, base-2 log, and so on).

With this in mind, we can fix up our w-bit ripple carry adder code:

```
w-bit Ripple Carry Adder (corrected)
   function Bit#(TAdd#(w,1)) addN (Bit#(w) x, Bit#(w) y, Bit#(1) c0);
1
      Bit#(w) s;
\mathbf{2}
      Bit#(TAdd#(w,1)) c = {?, c0};
3
       for(Integer i=0; i< valueOf(w); i=i+1) begin</pre>
4
          let cs = fa (x[i],y[i],c[i]);
5
          c[i+1] = cs[1]; s[i] = cs[0];
6
       end
7
       return {c[w],s};
8
   endfunction
9
```

The only differences from the earlier, almost correct version is that we have used TAdd#(w,1) instead of w+1 in lines 1 and 3 and we have inserted valueOf() in line 4.

### 2.2 Static Elaboration and Static Values

The *w*-bit ripple carry adder in the previous section illustrated how we can use syntactic for-loops to represent repetitive circuit structures. Conceptually, the compiler "unfolds" such loops into an acyclic graph representing a (possibly large) combinational circuit. This process in the compiler is called *static elaboration*. In fact, in BSV you can even write recursive functions that will be statically unfolded to represent, for example, a tree-shaped circuit.

Of course, this unfolding needs to terminate statically (during compilation), i.e., the conditions that control the unfolding cannot depend on a dynamic, or run-time value (a value that is only known when the circuit itself runs in hardware, or is simulated in a simulator). For example, if we wrote a for-loop whose termination index was such a run-time value, or a recursive function whose base case test depended on such a run-time value, such a loop/function could not be unfolded statically. Thus, static elaboration of loops and recursion must only depend on static values (values known during compilation).

This distinction of static elaboration vs. dynamic execution is not something that software programmers typically think about, but it is an important topic in hardware design. In software, a recursive function is typically implemented by "unfolding" it into a stack of frames, and this stack grows and shrinks dynamically; in addition, data is communicated between frames, and computation is done on this data. In a corresponding hardware implementation, on the other hand, the function may be statically unfolded by the compiler into a tree of modules (corresponding to pre-elaborating the software stack of frames), and only the data communication and computation happens dynamically. Similarly, the for-loop in the *w*-bit adder, if written in C, would typically actually execute as a sequential loop, dynamically, whereas what we have seen is that our loop is statically expanded into repetitive hardware structures, and only the bits flow through it dynamically.

Of course, it is equally possible in hardware as well to implement recursive structures and loops dynamically (the former by pushing and popping frames or contexts in memory, the latter with FSMs), mimicing exactly what software does. In fact, later we shall see the BSV "FSM" sub-language where we can express dynamic sequential loops with dynamic bounds. But this discussion is intended to highlight the fact that hardware designers usually think much more carefully about what structures should/will be statically elaborated vs. what remains to execute dynamically.

To emphasize this point a little further, let us take a slight variation of our *w*-bit adder, in which we do *not* declare c as a Bit#(TAdd#(w,1)) bit vector:

```
w-bit Ripple Carry Adder (variation)
   function Bit#(w+1) addN (Bit#(w) x, Bit#(w) y, Bit#(1) c);
1
       Bit#(w) s;
2
       for(Integer i=0; i<w; i=i+1) begin</pre>
3
          let cs = fa (x[i],y[i],c);
4
          c = cs[1]; s[i] = cs[0];
5
       end
\mathbf{6}
       return {c,s};
7
   endfunction
```

Note that c is declared as an input parameter; it is "repeatedly updated" in the loop, and it is returned in the final result. The traditional software view of this is that c refers to a location in memory which is repeatedly updated as the loop is traversed sequentially, and whatever value finally remains in that location is returned in the result.

In BSV, c is just a name for value (there is no memory involved here, let alone any concept of c being a name for a location in memory that can be updated). The loop is statically elaborated, and the "update" of c is just a notational device to say that this is what c now means for the rest of the elaboration. In fact this code, and the previous version where c was declared as Bit#(TAdd#(w,1)) are both statically elaborated into identical hardware.

Over time, it becomes second nature to the BSV programmer to think of variables in this way, i.e., not the traditional software view as an assignable location, but the purer view of being simply a name for a value during static elaboration (ultimately, a name for a set of wires).<sup>1</sup>

### 2.3 Integer types, conversion, extension and truncation

One particular value type in BSV, Integer is only available as a static type for static variables. Semantically, these are true mathematical unbounded integers, not limited to

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>For compiler afficionados: this is a pure functional view, or Static Single Assignement (SSA) view of variables.

any arbitrary bit width like 32, 64, or 64K (of course, they're ultimately limited by the memory of the system your compiler runs on). However, for dynamic integer values in hardware we typically limit them to a certain bit width, such as:

```
      Various BSV fixed-width signed and unsigned integer types

      int, Int #(32)
      \\ 32-bit signed integers

      Int #(23)
      \\ 23-bit signed integers

      Int #(w)
      \\ signed integer of polymorphic width w

      UInt #(48)
      \\ 48-bit unsigned integers
```

One frequently sees Integer used in statically elaborated loops; the use of this type is a further signal to remind the reader that this is a statically elaborated loop.

In keeping with BSV's philosophy of strong type checking, the compiler never performs automatic (silent) conversion between these various integer types; the user needs to signal a desired conversion explicitly. To convert from Integer to a fixed-width integer type, one applies the fromInteger function. Examples:

```
fromInteger ______
for(Integer j=0; i< 100; j=j+1) begin
Int #(32) x = fromInteger (j /4);
UInt #(17) y = fromInteger (valueOf (w) + j);
...
end
```

For truncation of one fixed-size integer type to a shorter one, use the truncate function. For extension to a longer type, use zeroExtend, signExtend and extend. The latter function will zero-extend for unsigned types and sign-extend for signed types. Examples:

```
extend and truncate ______

Int #(32) x = ...;

Int #(64) y = signExtend (x);

x = truncate (y);

y = extend (x+2); // will sign extend
```

Finally, wherever you really need to, you can always convert one type to another. For example you might declare a memory address to be of type UInt#(32), but in some cache you may want to treat bits [8:6] as a signed integer bank address. You'd use notation like the following:

```
pack and unpack -

typedef UInt #(32) Addr;

typedef Int #(3) BankAddr;

Addr a = ...

BankAddr ba = unpack (pack (a)[8:6]);
```

The first two lines define some type synonyms, i.e., Addr and BankAddr can now be regarded as more readable synonyms for UInt#(32) abd Int#(3). The pack function converts the Int #(32) value a into a Bit#(32) value; we then select bits [8:6] of this, yielding a Bit#(3) value; the unpack function then converts this into an Int#(3) value.

This last discussion is not a compromise on strong static type checking. Type conversions will always be necessary because one always plays application-specific representational tricks (how abtract values and structures are coded in bits) that the compiler cannot possible know about, particularly in hardware designs. However, by making type conversions explicit in the source code, we eliminate most of the accidental and obscure errors that creep in either due to weak type checking or due to silent implicit conversions.

## 2.4 Arithmetic-Logic Units (ALUs)

At the heart of any processor is an ALU (perhaps more than one) that performs all the additions, subtractions, multiplications, ANDs, ORs, comparisons, shifts, and so on, the operations on which computations are built. In the previous sections we had a glimpse of building one such operation—an adder. In this section we look at a few more operations, which we then combine into an ALU.

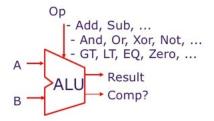


Figure 2.4: ALU schematic symbol

Fig. 2.4 shows the symbol commonly used to represent ALUs in circuit schematics. It has data inputs A and B, and an Op input by which we select the function performed by the ALU. It has a Result data output, and perhaps other outputs like Comp? for the outputs of comparisons, for carry and overflow flags, and so on.

#### 2.4.1 Shift operations

We will build up in stages to a general circuit for shifting a w-bit value right by n places.

#### Logical Shift Right by a Fixed Amount

Fig. 2.5 shows a circuit for shifting a 4-bit value right by 2 (i.e., towards the least-significant bit), filling in zeroes in the just-vacated most-significant bits (in general the input and output could be w bits). As you can see, there's really no logic to it (:-), it's just a wiring diagram. BSV has a built-in operator for this, inherited from Verilog and SystemVerilog:



Figure 2.5: Logical shift right by 2

	Shift operators					
1	abcd >> 2	// right shift by 2				
2	abcd << 2	// left shift by 2				

Even if it were not built-in, it is very easy to write a BSV function for this:

```
Shift function

function Bit #(w) logical_shift_right (Integer n, Bit #(w) arg);

Bit #(w) result = 0;

for (Integer j=0; j<(valueOf(w)-n); j=j+1)

result [j] = arg [j+n];

return result;

endfunction
```

This is statically elaborated to produce exactly the same circuit.

Other kinds of shifts—arithmetic shifts, rotations, etc.—are similar.

#### Multiplexers

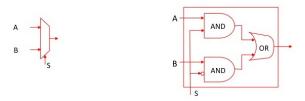


Figure 2.6: 2-way multiplexer

A 2-way multiplexer ("mux") is a circuit that takes two inputs of type t and forwards one of them into the output of type t. The choice is made with a boolean control input. The left side of Fig. 2.6 shows an abstract symbol for a mux: one of the two inputs A or B is forwarded to the output depending on the value of the control input S. The right side of the figure shows an implementation in terms of AND and OR gates, for a 1-bit wide, 2-way mux (a *w*-bit wide mux would just replicated this *w* times, and tie all the control inputs together).

Larger muxes that select 1 out of n inputs (n > 2) can in principle be created merely by cascading 2-way muxes. For example, Fig. 2.7 shows a 4-way mux created using 2-way

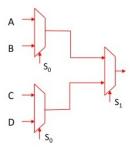


Figure 2.7: 4-way multiplexer

muxes. Of course, the previous boolean control line now generalizes to Bit#(ln) where ln is the base-2 logarithm of n (rounded up to the next integer), i.e., we need a Bit#(ln) control input to identify one of the n inputs to forward.

In BSV code we don't directly talk about muxes, but use classical programming language conditional expressions, if-then-else statements, or case statements:

	Multiplexers
1	result = ( s ? a : b );
2	
3	if (s)
4	result = a;
5	else
6	result = b;
7	
8	case (s2)
9	0: result = a;
10	1: result = b;
11	2: result = c;
12	3: result = d;
13	endcase

Of course, unlike conditional expressions, if-then-else and case statements can be more complex because you can have multiple statements in each of the arms. The differences in style are mostly a matter of readability and personal preference, since the compiler will produce the same hardware circuits anyway. Both *bsc* and downstream tools perform a lot of optimization on muxes, so there is generally no hardware advantage to writing it one way or another.

Notice that we said that the inputs and output of the mux are of some type t; we did not say Bit#(w). Indeed, Bit#(w) is just a special case. In general, it is good style to preserve abstract types (Address, EthernetPacket, CRC, IPAddress, ...) rather than descending into bits all the time, in order to preserve readability, and the robustness that comes with strong type checking.

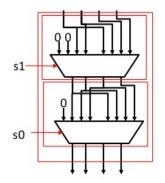


Figure 2.8: Shift by s = 0, 1, 2, 3

#### Logical Shift Right by n, a Dynamic Amount

We can now see how to implement a circuit that shifts a *w*-bit input value by *s*, where *s* is a dynamic value. The general scheme is illustrated in Fig. 2.8. Suppose the shift-amount is s, of type Bit#(n). Then, we cascade *n* stages as follows:

- Stage 0: if s[0] is 0, pass through, else shift by 1 (2<sup>0</sup>)
- Stage 1: if s[1] is 0, pass through, else shift by 2 (2<sup>1</sup>)
- Stage 2: if s[2] is 0, pass through, else shift by 4 (2<sup>2</sup>)
- ...
- Stage j: if s[j] is 0, pass through, else shift by  $2^{j}$
- ...

You can see that the total amount shifted is exactly what is specified by the value of s! Each stage is a simple application of constant shifting and multiplexing controlled by one bit of s. And the sequence of stages can be written as a for-loop.

You will be writing this BSV program as an exercise in the laboratory.

#### 2.4.2 Enumerated types for expressing ALU opcodes

An ALU is a multi-purpose box. It typically has two input ports and an output port, and an additional control input port, the *opcode*, which specifies what function we want the ALU to perform on the inputs: addition, subtraction, multiplication, shifting, testing for zero, ... and so on. Of course the control input is represented in hardware as some number of bits, but following our preference to use modern programming language practice for better readability and robustness due to type checking, we define these as *enumerated types* with symbolic names.

Let's start with a simple, non-ALU example of enumerated types. Suppose we had a variable to identify colors on a screen—it takes one of three values: Red, Blue and Green. Of course, in hardware these will need some encoding, perhaps 00, 01 and 10, respectively. But in BSV we typically just say:

Line 1 is an enumerated type just like in C or C++, defining a new type called Color which has three constants called Red, Blue and Green. Line 2 is a BSV incantation that tells the compiler to pick a canonical bit representation for these constants, and to define the == and the != operators for this type, so we can compare to expressions of type Color for equality and inequality. In fact, in this case *bsc* will actually choose the representations 00, 01 an 10, respectively for these constants, but (a) that is an internal detail that need not concern us, and (b) BSV has mechanisms to choose alternate encodings if we so wish.

The real payoff comes in strong type checking. Suppose, elsewhere, we have another type representing traffic light colors:

```
Enumerated types ______
typedef enum {Green, Yellow, Red} TrafficLightColor
deriving (Bits, Eq);
```

These, too, will be represented using 00, 01 and 10, respectively, but strong typechecking will ensure that we never accidentally mix up the Color values with TrafficLightColor values, even though both are represented using 2 bits. Any attempt to compare values across these types, or to pass an argument of one of these type when the other is expected, will be caught as a static type checking error by bsc.

Processors execute instructions, which nowadays are often encoded in 32-bits. A few fields in a 32-bit instruction usually refer to ALU opcodes of a few classes. We define them using enumerated types like this:

```
Enumerated types for ALU opcodes

typedef enum {Eq, Neq, Le, Lt, Ge, Gt, AT, NT} BrFunc

deriving (Bits, Eq);

typedef enum {Add, Sub, And, Or, Xor, Nor,

Slt, Sltu, LShift, RShift, Sra} AluFunc

deriving (Bits, Eq);
```

The first definition is for comparison operators, and the second one is for arithmetic, logic and shift operators.

#### 2.4.3 Combinational ALUs

A combinational ALU can be regarded just as a composition of the various types and expressions we have seen thus far. The circuit is shown pictorially in Fig 2.9. In BSV code parts of this circuit are expressed using functions like the following, which can then be combined into the full ALU:

```
ALU partial function for Arith, Logic, Shift ops ______

function Data alu (Data a, Data b, AluFunc func);

Data res = case(func)

Add : (a + b);

Sub : (a - b);

And : (a & b);
```

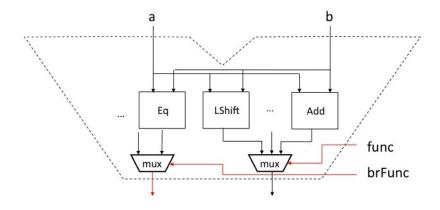


Figure 2.9: A combinational ALU

```
Or
                 : (a | b);
6
                 : (a ^ b);
          Xor
7
         Nor
                 : ~(a | b);
8
         Slt
                 : zeroExtend( pack( signedLT(a, b) ) );
9
         Sltu : zeroExtend( pack( a < b ) );</pre>
10
         LShift: (a << b[4:0]);
11
         RShift: (a >> b[4:0]);
12
         Sra
                 : signedShiftRight(a, b[4:0]);
13
      endcase;
14
      return res;
15
    endfunction
16
```

ALU partial function for Comparison

```
function Bool aluBr (Data a, Data b, BrFunc brFunc);
1
      Bool brTaken = case(brFunc)
2
        Eq : (a == b);
3
        Neq : (a != b);
4
        Le
            : signedLE(a, 0);
5
        Lt
            : signedLT(a, 0);
6
        Ge
            : signedGE(a, 0);
7
             : signedGT(a, 0);
        Gt
8
        ΑT
             : True;
9
             : False;
        NT
10
      endcase;
11
      return brTaken;
12
    endfunction
13
```

#### 2.4.4 Multiplication

We close this section with another small exercise, one of the arithmetic functions we may want in the ALU: multiplying an *m*-bit number and an *n*-bit number to produce an m + nbit result. Note that some processors do not have a multiplier! They just implement a multiplication-by-repeated-addition algorithm in software. However, in most situations, where multiplication performance is important, one would want a hardware implementation. Suppose were multiplying two 4-bit values together. Our high-school multiplication algorithm (translated from decimal to binary) looks like this:

```
Multiplication by repeated addition
                1 1 0 1
                            // Multiplicand, b
1
                            // Multiplier,
\mathbf{2}
                1 0 1 1
                                               а
                   ____
3
                1 1 0 1
                            // b x a[0] (== b), shifted by 0
4
                            // b x a[1] (== b), shifted by 1
              1 1 0 1
5
                            // b x a[2] (== 0), shifted by 2
            0 0 0 0
6
                            // b x a[3] (== b), shifted by 3
          1 1 0 1
7
8
        1 0 0 0 1 1 1 1
9
```

Thus, the  $j^{th}$  partial sum is (a[j]==0 ? 0 : b) << j, and the overall sum is just a for-loop to add these sums. Fig. 2.10 illustrates the circuit, and here is the BSV code to express this:

	BSV code for combinational multiplication
1	function Bit#(64) mul32(Bit#(32) a, Bit#(32) b);
2	Bit#(32) prod = 0;
3	Bit#(32) tp = 0;
4	for (Integer i=0; i<32; i=i+1) begin
5	Bit#(32) m = (a[i]==0)? 0 : b;
6	Bit#(33) sum = add32(m,tp,0);
7	<pre>prod[i] = sum[0];</pre>
8	<pre>tp = truncateLSB(sum);</pre>
9	end
10	<pre>return {tp,prod};</pre>
11	endfunction

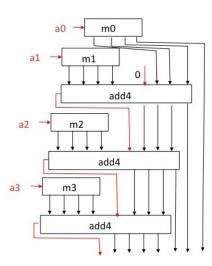
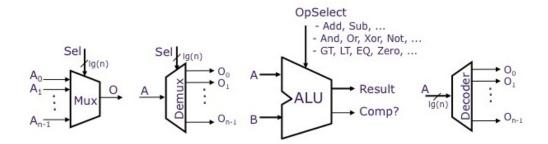


Figure 2.10: A combinational multiplier



### 2.5 Summary, and a word about efficient ALUs

Figure 2.11: Various combinational circuits

Fig. 2.11 shows symbols for various combinational circuits. We have already discussed multiplexers and ALUs. A demultiplexer ("demux") transmits its input value to one of n output ports identified by the Sel input (the other output ports are typically forced to 0). A decoder takes an input A of log n bits carrying some value  $0 \le j \le 2^n - 1$ . It has n outputs such that the  $j^{th}$  output is 1 and all the other outputs are 0. We also say that the outputs represent a "one-hot" bit vector, because exactly one of the outputs is 1. Thus, a decoder is equivalent to a demux where the demux's Sel input is the decoder's A, and the demux's A input is the constant 1-bit value 1.

The simple examples in this chapter of a ripple-carry adder and a simple multiplier are not meant to stand as examples of efficient design. They are merely tutorial examples to demystify ALUs for the new student of computer architecture. Both our combinational ripple-carry adder and our combinational repeated-addition multiplier have very long chains of gates, and wider inputs and outputs make this worse. Long combinational paths, in turn, restrict the speed of the clocks of the circuits in which we embed these ALUs, and this ultimately affects processor speeds. We may have to work, instead, with *pipelined* multipliers that take multiple clock cycles to compute a result; we will discuss clocks, pipelines and so on in subsequent chapters.

In addition, modern processors also have hardware implementations for floating point operations, fixed point operations, transcendental functions, and more. A further concern for the modern processor designer is power consumption. Circuit design choices for the ALU can affect the power consumed per operation, and other controls may be able to switch off power to portions of the ALU that are not currently active. In fact, the topic of efficient computer arithmetic and ALUs has a deep and long history; people have devoted their careers to it, whole journals and conferences are devoted to it; here, we have barely scratched the surface.

# Chapter 3

# Sequential (Stateful) Circuits and Modules

### 3.1 Registers

#### 3.1.1 Space and time

Recall the combinational "multiply" function from Sec. 2.4.4:

```
BSV code for combinational multiplication
    function Bit#(64) mul32(Bit#(32) a, Bit#(32) b);
1
       Bit#(32) prod = 0;
\mathbf{2}
       Bit#(32) tp = 0;
3
       for (Integer i=0; i<32; i=i+1) begin</pre>
4
          Bit#(32) m = (a[i]==0)? 0 : b;
5
          Bit#(33) sum = add32(m,tp,0);
6
          prod[i] = sum[0];
7
          tp = truncateLSB(sum);
8
       end
9
       return {tp,prod};
10
    endfunction
11
```

Static elaboration will unfold the loop into a combinational circuit that contains 32 instances of the add32 circuit. The circuit is elaborated in *space*, i.e., it is eventually laid out in silicon on your ASIC or FPGA.

An alternative is to elaborate it in *time*: have only a single instance of the add32 circuit which is used repeatedly 32 times in a temporal sequence of steps. To do this, we need a device called a "register" that will hold the partial results from one step so that they can be used as inputs to add32 in the next step. We also use the words "state element" and "sequential element" for a register, because it is in different states over time.

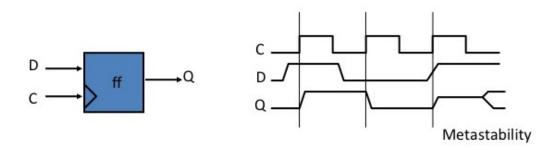


Figure 3.1: An edge-triggered D flip-flop and an example input-output waveform

#### 3.1.2 D flip-flops

The left side of Fig. 3.1 shows the symbol for the most commonly used state element, an edge-triggered D flip-flop (DFF). Although the term "register" is more general, we typically use the word to refer to such a DFF. It has two inputs, D (data) and C (clock), and an output Q. The clock input C is typically a regular, square-wave oscillation. On each rising edge of C, the register samples the current value of D, and this value appears on the Q output "shortly" (needs to propagate from D to Q through internal circuits which typically have a small delay compared to the time period of C).

In the waveforms on the right side of Fig. 3.1, at the first rising edge of C, D has the value 1; the value of Q shortly becomes 1. At the next rising edge, D has value 0, and Q shortly becomes 0. The third rising edge illustrates a bad situation, where D is still changing at the rising edge. Here, it is possible for the DFF to enter the so-called "meta-stable" state where, like Hamlet, it vacillates over declaring the sampled value to be 0 or not 0 (i.e., 1). During this time, the Q output may not even be a valid digital value—its voltage may be in the "forbidden" range between the thresholds that we define as "0" and "1". As you can imagine, a downstream circuit does not get a clear, unambiguous 0 or 1, and so the problem can propagate through several levels of circuits. Worse, meta-stability may persist for an arbitrarily long time before it finally settles into the 0 or 1 state. For this reason, digital circuits are usually carefully designed to avoid this situation—clock periods are set long enough so that D inputs are always stable at 0 or 1 at the rising clock edge.

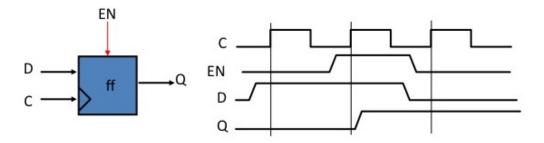


Figure 3.2: A D flip-flop with Write-Enable

D flip-flops often have an additional "Write Enable" input, illustrated in Fig. 3.2. Again, C is a continuous square-wave oscillation. However, the D input is sampled only when the EN input is true. Look at the example waveform on the right of the figure. Assume that Q is initially 0 (from some previous sampling of D). At the first rising clock edge, D is 1.

However, since EN is 0, it is not sampled, and Q retains its previous value of 0. At the second clock edge, EN is 1, and so the value of D (1) is sampled, and arrives at Q. At the third clock edge, EN is 0, so D (0) is not sampled, and Q remains at 1.

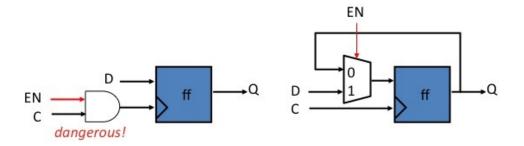
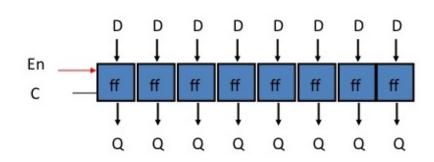


Figure 3.3: Implementing a D flip-flop with Write-Enable

Fig. 3.3 shows two attempts at implementing the Write-Enable feature using an ordinary D flip-flop. The attempt on the left may at first seem reasonable: just disable the clock when EN is 0, using an AND gate. But this is very dangerous, because the EN signal itself may be generated by some upstream circuit using the same clock C, and so it may change at roughly the same time as the clock edge. This reopens the door not only to metastability, but also to so-called "glitches", where a slight mismatch in the timing of the edges of EN and C can cause a momentary pulse to appear at the output of the AND gate, which may cause the DFF to sample the current D value. In general, in digital circuits, it is very dangerous to mess around with clocks as if they were ordinary logic signals. In large, complex, high-speed digital circuits, the clock signals are very carefully engineered by experienced specialists, and are kept entirely separate from the data paths of the circuit. The right side of Fig. 3.3 shows a safer way to implement the EN feature, where we do not tinker with the clock.

In BSV, clocks have a distinct data type Clock, and strong type checking ensures that we can never accidentally use clocks in ordinary computation expressions.

D flip-flops may also have a "Reset" signal which re-initializes the flip-flop to a fixed value, say 0. Reset signals may be synchronous (they take effect on the next rising clock edge) or asynchronous (they take effect immediately, irrespective of clock edges).



#### 3.1.3 Registers

Figure 3.4: An *n*-bit register built with D flip-flops

Fig. 3.4 shows an *n*-bit "register" built with D flip-flops. All the clocks are tied together, as are all the EN signals, and we can think of the register as sampling an *n*-bit input value on the rising clock edge. In BSV, one declares and instantiates a register like this:

1 2

1 2

```
Declaring and Instantiating Registers _
Reg #(Bit #(32)) s <- mkRegU;
Reg #(UInt #(32)) i <- mkReg (17);</pre>
```

The first line declares  $\mathbf{s}$  to be a register that contains 32-bit values, with unspecified initial value ("U" for Uninitialized). The second line declares  $\mathbf{i}$  to be a register containing a 32-bit unsigned integer with initial value 17 (when the circuit is reset, the register will contain 17). Registers are assigned inside rules and methods (we'll describe these shortly) using a special assignment syntax:<sup>1</sup>

	Register ass	gment statements
1	s <= s & 32'h000F000F;	
2	i <= i + 10;	

In the first line, at a clock edge, the old value of register  $\mathbf{s}$  (before the clock edge) is bitwise ANDed with a 32-bit hexadecimal constant value, and stored back into the register  $\mathbf{s}$  (visible at the next clock edge). In the second line,  $\mathbf{i}$  is incremented by 10.

In BSV, all registers are strongly typed. Thus, even though **s** and **i** both contain 32-bit values, the following assignment will result in a type checking error, because Bit#(32) and UInt#(32) are different types.

s <= i;

BSV registers can hold any type, including data structures. Example:

```
Registers for non-numeric types _______

Reg #(EthernetHeader) ehdr <- mkRegU;

FIFOF #(EthernetPacket) input_queue <- mkFIFOF;

....

rule rl_foo;

ehdr <= input_queue.first.header;

endrule
```

# **3.2** Sequential loops with registers

Consider the following C code that repeatedly applies some function f to an initial value  $s_0$ , 32 times:

```
A small iteration example (C code) ______
int s = s0;
for (int i=0; i<32; i++)
s = f (s);
```

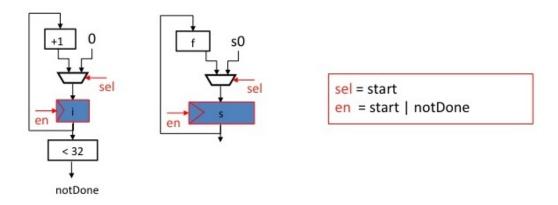


Figure 3.5: Circuit implementation of C iteration example

Fig. 3.5 shows a circuit that performs this function. It contains two registers holding i and s. When start, an external input signal pulse, is received, the muxes select the initial values 0 and s0, respectively; the EN signals are asserted, and the initial values are loaded into the registers. At this point, the notDone signal is true since i is indeed < 32. On subsequent clocks, the i register is incremented, and the s register is updated by f(s). When i reaches 32, the notDone signal becomes false, and so the EN signals are no longer true, and there is no further activity in the circuit (until the next start pulse arrives). The following BSV code describes this circuit:

```
A small iteration example (BSV code) ______

Reg#(Bit#(32)) s <- mkRegU();

Reg#(Bit#(6)) i <- mkReg(32);

rule step if (i<32);

s <= f(s);

i <= i+1;

r endrule
```

The rule on lines 4-7 has a name step, a rule condition or "guard" (i<32) and a rule body which is an "Action". The action itself consist of two sub-actions,  $s \le f(s)$  and  $i \le i+1$ .

It is best to think of a rule as an *instantaneous* action (zero time). A rule only executes if its condition is true. When it executes, all its actions happen simultaneously and instantaneously. Any value that is read from a register (such as s and i on the right-hand sides of the register assignments) will be the value prior to that instant. After the instant, the registers contain the values they were assigned. Since all the actions in a rule are simultaneous, the textual ordering between the above two actions is irrelevant; we could just as well have written:

```
Actions happen simultaneously (no textual order) _____
i <= i+1;
s <= f(s);
```

<sup>1</sup>This is the same as Verilog's "delayed assignment" syntax

1

2

Thus, this rule acts as a sequential loop, repeatedly updating registers i and s until (i > 32). When synthesized by *bsc*, we get the circuit of Fig.3.5.

#### A small BSV nuance regarding types

Why did we declare i to have the type Bit#(6) instead of Bit#(5)? It's because in the expression (i<32), the literal value 32 needs 6 bits, and the comparision operator < expects both its operands to have the same type. If we had declared i to have type Bit#(5) we would have got a type checking error in the expression (i<32). Suppose we try changing the condition to (i<=31), since the literal 31 only needs 5 bits?

\_\_\_\_\_ Types subtlety \_

```
1 ...
2 Reg#(Bit#(5)) i <- ...
3 
4 rule step if (i<=31);
5 ...
6 i <= i+1;
7 endrule</pre>
```

This program will type check and run, but it will never terminate! The reason is that when i has the value 31 and we increment it to i+1, it will simply wrap around to the value 0. Thus, the condition i<=31 is always true, and so the rule will fire forever. Note, the same issue could occur in a C program as well, but since we usually use 32-bit arithmetic in C programs, we rarely encounter it. We need to be much more sensitive to this in hardware designs, because we usually try to use the minimum number of bits adequate for the job.

### 3.3 Sequential version of the multiply operator

Looking at the combinational multiply operator code at the beginning of this chapter, we see that the values that change during the loop are *i*, **prod** and **tp**; we will need to hold these in registers when writing a sequential version of the loop:

```
BSV code for sequential multiplication
        Reg #(Bit#(32)) a
                                <- mkRegU;
1
        Reg #(Bit#(32)) b
                                <- mkRegU;
2
        Reg #(Bit#(32)) prod <- mkRegU;</pre>
3
        Reg #(Bit#(32)) tp
                                <- mkRegU;
4
        Reg #(Bit#(6)) i
                                <- mkReg (32);
\mathbf{5}
6
        rule mulStep if (i<32);</pre>
7
                        = (a[i]==0)? 0 : b;
           Bit#(32) m
8
           Bit#(33) sum = add32(m,tp,0);
9
           prod[i] <= sum[0];</pre>
                                                // (not quite kosher BSV)
10
           tp <= truncateLSB(sum);</pre>
11
           i <= i + 1;
12
        endrule
13
```

The register i is initialized to 32, which is the quiescent state of the circuit (no activity). To start the computation, something has to load a and b with the values to be multiplied and load prod, tp and i with their initial value of 0 (we will see this initialization later). Then, the rule fires repeatedly as long as (i<32). The first four lines of the body of the rule are identical to the body of the for-loop in the combinational function at the start of this chapter, except that the assignments to prod[i] and tp have been changed to register assignments.

Although functionally ok, we can improve it to a more efficient circuit by eliminating dynamic indexing. Consider the expression a[i]. This is a 32-way mux: 32 1-bit input wires connected to the bits of a, with i as the mux selector. However, since i is a simple incrementing series, we could instead repeatedly shift a right by 1, and always look at the least significant bit (LSB), effectively looking at a[0], a[1], a[2], ... Shifting by 1 requires no gates (it's just wires!), and so we eliminate a mux. Similarly, when we assign to prod[i], we need a decoder to route the value into the  $i^{th}$  bit of prod. Instead, we could repeatedly shift prod right by 1, and insert the new bit at the most significant bit (MSB). This eliminates the decoder. Here is the fixed-up code:

```
BSV code for sequential multiplication
       Reg #(Bit#(32)) a
                               <- mkRegU;
1
       Reg #(Bit#(32)) b
                               <- mkRegU;
2
       Reg #(Bit#(32)) prod <- mkRegU;</pre>
3
       Reg #(Bit#(32)) tp
                               <- mkRegU;
4
                               <- mkReg (32);
       Reg #(Bit#(6)) i
5
6
       rule mulStep if (i<32);</pre>
7
          Bit#(32) m
                         = (a[0]==0)? 0 : b;
                                                   // only look at LSB of a
8
                                                   // shift a by 1
           a <= a >> 1;
9
          Bit#(33) sum = add32(m,tp,0);
10
           prod <= { sum[0], prod [31:1] };</pre>
                                                   // shift prod by 1, insert at MSB
11
           tp <= truncateLSB(sum);</pre>
12
           i <= i + 1;
13
       endrule
14
```

Fig. 3.6 shows the circuit described by the BSV code. Compared to the combinational version,

- The number of instances of the add32 operator circuit has reduced from 32 to 1, but we have added some registers and muxes.
- The longest combinational path has been reduced from 32 cascaded add32s to one add32 plus a few muxes.
- To complete each multiplication, the combinational version has a combinational delay corresponding to its longest path. The sequential version takes 32 clock cycles.

## **3.4** Modules and Interfaces

Just as, in object-oriented programming (OOP), we organize programs into classes/objects that interact via method calls, similarly in BSV we organize our designs into *modules* that

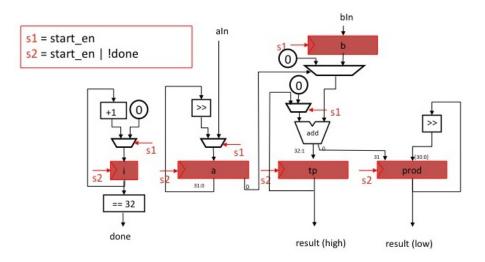


Figure 3.6: Sequential multiplication circuit

interact using *methods*. And in BSV, just like OOP, we separate the concept of the *interface* of a module—"*What* methods does it implement and what are the argument and result types?"—from the module itself— "*How* does it implement the methods?".

For example, if we want to package our multiplier into a module that can be instantiated (reused) multiple times, we first think about the interface it should present to the external world. Here is a proposed interface:

```
Multiplier module interface —

interface Multiply32;

method Action start (Bit#(32) a, Bit#(32) b);

method Bit#(64) result;

endinterface
```

A module with this interface offers two methods that can be invoked from outside. The **start** method takes two arguments **a** and **b**, and has **Action** type, namely it just performs some action (this method does not return any result). In this case, it just kicks off the internal computation to multiply **a** and **b**, which may take many steps. The **result** method has no arguments, and returns a value of type **Bit#(64)**.

So far, this looks just like a conventional object-oriented language (with perhaps different syntax details). However, in BSV, a method is always invoked from a rule, either directly or indirectly from another method which in turn is invoked by a rule, and so on. In other words, all method invocations orginate in a rule. Just like a rule has a rule condition, a method may also have a method condition which limits when it may be invoked. This rule-based semantics is the key difference from traditional object-oriented languages. These rule-based semantics also have a direct hardware interpretation.

Fig. 3.7 illustrates how BSV methods are mapped into hardware. Every method is a bundle of input and output signals. Every method has one output signal called the "ready" signal (RDY) corresponding to the method condition. A rule in the external environment is allowed to invoke the method only when RDY is true. Method arguments become input signals (like a and b), and method results become output signals. Finally, Action methods

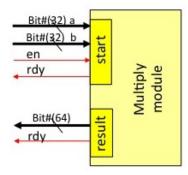


Figure 3.7: Hardware interpretation of interface methods

like start have an input "enable" signal (EN) which, when asserted by the external rule, causes the method's action inside the module to happen.

We can now see how our multiplier is packaged into a module.

```
Multiplier module
    module mkMultiply32 (Multiply32);
1
       Reg #(Bit#(32)) a
                                <- mkRegU;
2
       Reg #(Bit#(32)) b
                                <- mkRegU;
3
       Reg #(Bit#(32)) prod <- mkRegU;</pre>
4
       Reg #(Bit#(32)) tp
                                <- mkRegU;
5
       Reg #(Bit#(6)) i
                                <- mkReg (32);
6
7
       rule mulStep if (i<32);</pre>
8
           Bit#(32) m = ( (a[0]==0)? 0 : b );
9
           a <= a >> 1;
10
           Bit#(33) sum = add32(m,tp,0);
11
           prod <= { sum[0], prod [31:1] };</pre>
12
           tp <= truncateLSB(sum);</pre>
13
           i <= i + 1;
14
        endrule
15
16
       method Action start(Bit#(32) aIn, Bit#(32) bIn) if (i==32);
17
           a <= aIn;
18
           b \leq bIn;
19
           i <= 0;
20
           tp <= 0;
21
           prod <= 0;
22
        endmethod
23
24
       method Bit#(64) result if (i == 32);
25
           return {tp,prod};
26
        endmethod
27
    endmodule
28
```

In line 1, we declare the module mkMultiply32 offering the Multiply32 interface. Lines

2-15 are identical to what we developed in the last section. Lines 17-23 implement the start method. The method condition, or guard, is (i=32). When invoked, it initializes all the registers. Lines 25-27 implement the result method. Its method condition or guard is also (i=32). When invoked it returns  $\{tp, prod\}$  as its result.

BSV modules typically follow this organization: internal state (here, lines 2-6), followed by internal behavior (here, lines 8-15) followed by interface definitions (here, lines 17-27). As a programming convention, we typically write module names as mk..., and pronounce the first syllable as "make", reflecting the fact that a module can be instantiated multiple times.

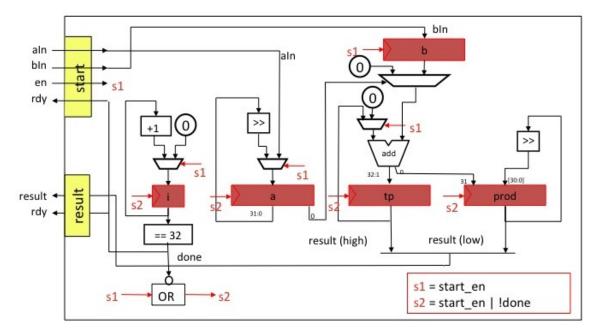


Figure 3.8: Multiplier module circuit

Fig. 3.8 shows the overall circuit of the module described by the BSV code. It pulls together all the individual pieces we have discussed so far.

To emphasize the distinction between an interface and a module that offers that interface, here is another module that implements exactly the same interface but uses our earlier combinational function.

```
Multiplier module, alternative
    module mkMultiply32 (Multiply32);
1
        Reg #(Bit#(64)) rg_result <- mkRegU;</pre>
\mathbf{2}
        Reg #(Bool)
                          done
                                     <- mkReg (False);
3
4
        function Bit#(64) mul32(Bit#(32) a, Bit#(32) b);
\mathbf{5}
           Bit#(32) prod = 0;
6
           Bit#(32) tp = 0;
7
           for (Integer i=0; i<32; i=i+1) begin</pre>
8
              Bit#(32) m = ( (a[i]==0)? 0 : b );
9
              Bit#(33) sum = add32(m,tp,0);
10
              prod[i] = sum[0];
11
```

```
tp = truncateLSB(sum);
12
           end
13
           return {tp,prod};
14
        endfunction
15
16
        method Action start(Bit#(32) aIn, Bit#(32) bIn) if (! done);
17
           rg_result <= mult32 (aIn, bIn);</pre>
18
           done <= True;</pre>
19
        endmethod
20
21
        method Bit#(64) result if (done);
22
           return rg_result;
23
        endmethod
24
    endmodule
25
```

Lines 4-14 are the same combinational function we saw earlier. The **start** method simply invokes the combinational function on its arguments and stores the output in the **rg\_result** register. The **result** register simply returns the value in the register, when the computation is done.

Similarly, one can have many other implementations of the same multiplier interface, with different internal algorithms that offer various efficiency tradeoffs (area, power, latency, throughput):

```
1
2
```

```
______ Multiplier module, more alternatives
module mkBlockMultiply (Multiply);
module mkBoothMultiply (Multiply);
```

### 3.4.1 Polymorphic multiply module

Let us now generalize our multiplier circuit so that it doesn't just work with 32-bit arguments, producing a 64-bit result, but works with *n*-bit arguments and produces a 2n-bit result. Thus, we could use the same module in other environments which may require, say, a 13-bit multiplier or a 24-bit multiplier. The interface declaration changes to the following:

And the module definition changes to the following:

```
Polymorphic multiplier module

module mkMultiply (Multiply #(tn));

Integer n = valueOf (tn);

Reg #(Bit#(n)) a <- mkRegU;
```

```
Reg #(Bit#(n)) b
                                <- mkRegU;
\mathbf{5}
        Reg #(Bit#(n)) prod <- mkRegU;</pre>
6
        Reg #(Bit#(n)) tp
                                <- mkRegU;
\overline{7}
        Reg #(Bit#(TAdd#(1,TLog#(tn)))) i <- mkReg (fromInteger(n));</pre>
8
9
        rule mulStep if (i<32);</pre>
10
           Bit#(n) m
                          = (a[0]==0)? 0 : b;
11
            a <= a >> 1;
12
           Bit#(Tadd#(tn,1)) sum = addN(m,tp,0);
13
           prod <= { sum[0], prod [n-1:1] };</pre>
14
           tp <= truncateLSB(sum);</pre>
15
            i <= i + 1;
16
        endrule
17
18
        method Action start(Bit#(n) aIn, Bit#(n) bIn) if (i==fromInteger(n));
19
            a <= aIn;
20
           b <= bIn;</pre>
21
            i <= 0;
^{22}
            tp <= 0;
23
           prod \leq 0;
24
        endmethod
25
26
        method Bit#(64) result if (i==fromInteger(n));
27
           return {tp,prod};
28
        endmethod
29
    endmodule
30
```

Note the use of the pseudo-function valueOf to convert from an integer in the type domain to an integer in the value domain; the use of the function fromInteger to convert from type Integer to type Bit#(...), and the use of type-domain operators like TAdd, TLog and so on to derive related numeric types.

### 3.5 Register files

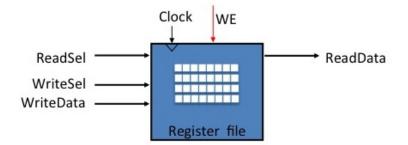


Figure 3.9: A Register File with four 8-bit registers

Registers files are arrays of registers, with a way to selectively read and write an individual register indentified by an index. Fig. 3.9 illustrates such a circuit component. The ReadSel signal is an index that identifies one of the n registers in the register file. The data in that register is presented on the ReadData output. This is usually a combinational function, just like reading a single register. The WriteSel signal identifies one of the registers, and if the WE enable signal is true, then WriteData is stored into that selected register.

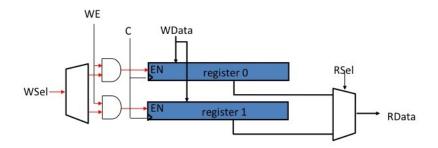


Figure 3.10: Register File implementation

Fig. 3.10 illustrates how a register file can be implemented. The read and write circuits are entirely separate. The read circuit is just a mux choosing the Q outputs of one of the registers. In the write circuit, Write Data is fed to the D inputs of all the registers. The Write Enable signal is fed to only one selected register, which captures the Write Data.

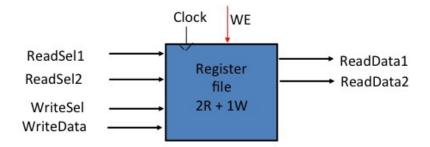


Figure 3.11: Multi-port Register File

The read and write interfaces of the register file are called "ports". Many register files have more than one read and/or write port. Fig. 3.11 illustrates a register file with two read ports and one write port. It is easy to see how to extend the implementation of Fig. 3.10 for this—simply replicate the mux that implements the read circuit. When implementing multiple write ports, one has to define what it means if both Write Selects are the same, i.e., both ports want to write to the same register, possibly with different values. We may declare this illegal, or a no-op, or fix a priority so that one of them is ignored. All these schemes are easy to implement.

Why are multi-port register files interesting? In a CPU, the architectural register set may be implemented directly as a register file. Many instructions (such as ADD) read two registers, perform an op, and write the result to a register. If we wish to execute one such instruction on every clock cycle, then clearly we need a 2-read port, 1-write port register file. If we wish to execute two such instructions in every clock (as happens is modern "superscalar" designs), we'll need a 4-read port, 2-write port register file. Register files are declared and instantiated in BSV like this:

```
- Declaring and Instantiating Register Files
    import RegFile :: *;
1
2
    . . .
   module ...
3
4
       RegFile #(Bit#(5), Bit#(32)) rf1 <- mkRegFileFull;</pre>
\mathbf{5}
       RegFile #(Bit#(5), Bit#(32)) rf2 <- mkRegFile (1,31);</pre>
6
       . . .
7
    endmodule
8
```

The first line is typically found at the top of a source file, and imports the BSV library package for register files. The **RegFile** declaration lines (found inside a module in the file) declares **rf1** to be a register file that is indexed by a 5-bit value (and so can contain  $2^5 = 32$  registers), and whose registers contain 32-bit values. The **mkRegFileFull** module creates a full complement of registers for the 5-bit index, i.e., 32 registers. The next line is similar, except that we only allocate 31 registers, indexed from 1 to 31 (for example, in many architectures, register 0 is defined as a "constant 0" register, and so we may choose not to have a physical register for it).

Register files are accessed using the sel and upd method. The following example shows reading from register 2 and 5, adding them, and storing the result back in register 13.

```
1
2
3
4
```

 $\mathbf{5}$ 

```
_____ Using a register file _
rule rl_add_instruction;
let arg1 = rf2.sel (2);
let arg2 = rf2.sel (5);
rf2.upd (13, arg1 + arg2)
endrule
```

### 3.6 Memories and BRAMs

A register file is essentially a small "memory". The Read Select or Write Select input is an address identifying one location in the memory, and that location is read and/or written. However, building large memories out of register files is expensive in silicon area and power consumption. It is rare to see register files with more than a few dozen locations.

Typically, larger memories are built with special primitives that have been carefully engineered to be very dense (low area) and requiring much less power. The next step up in size from register files are on-chip SRAMs (Static RAMs), typically holding kilobytes to a few megabytes. They typically do not have more than one or two ports. The BSV library contains a number of SRAM modules which you get when you import the BRAM package:

```
____ The BRAM package _
```

When you synthesize your BSV code for FPGAs, these will typically be "inferred" by downstream FPGA synthesis tools as "Block RAMs" which are built-in high-density SRAM structures on FPGAs. Whey you synthesize for ASICs, these will typically be "inferred" as SRAMs by downstream ASIC synthesis tools.

For even larger memories, you typically have to go to off-chip SRAMs (multi-megabytes) and DRAMs (Dynamic RAMs) in the megabyte to gigabyte range. On chip, you will typically have a "memory interface" circuit that communicates with the off-chip memories.

Unlike register files, SRAMs and DRAMs usually do not have combinational reads, i.e., data is only available 1 or more clock cycles after the address has been presented. And they typically do not have multiple ports for reading or writing.

### Chapter 4

## Pipelining Complex Combinational Circuits

### 4.1 Introduction

In the last chapter we introduced sequential elements (registers), motivated by "folding" a large combinational circuit from an elaboration in space to an elaboration in time, in order to reduce area. Let us now consider the *throughput* or *repetition rate* of such circuits. Suppose the circuit computes some function f() (e.g., multiply), and we wish repeatedly to compute f() on a series of input datasets as fast as possible. The throughput of a circuit is measured by how often we can feed successive sets of inputs (which, in steady state, will be the same as how often we can extract successive sets of outputs). Throughput is often expressed in units such as as samples/second, megabits/second, etc., or by its inverse, the repetition rate, such as nanoseconds/sample.

In the pure combinational version (elaborated in space), we can feed the next set of inputs to the circuit only after the current set has made it safely through the circuit, i.e., after the longest combinational delay through the circuit. In practice what this means is that the combinational circuit is likely to have registers at either end, and we will only clock these registers at a rate that ensures that signals have propagated safely through the combinational circuit.

In the folded version (elaborated in time), after supplying one set of inputs we must clock the circuit n times where n is the degree of folding, producing the final answer, before we supply the next set of inputs. The folded version can likely be clocked at much higher speeds than the pure combinational version, since the largest combinational delay is likely to be much smaller. However, the maximum throughput is likely to be somewhat less than the pure combinational version because, in both versions, each sample must flow through the same total amount of combinational logic before the next sample is accepted, and in the folded version there is likely to some extra timing margin for safe registering in each circulation of data.

Note that in both the above versions, at any given time, the entire circuit is only involved in computation for one set of inputs, i.e., the output must be delivered before we can accept the next set of inputs. In this chapter, we look at using registers purely for improving throughput via *pipelining*. We will insert registers in the combinational version, and hence area will increase; however throughput will also increase because earlier stages of the circuit can safely start on the next set of inputs while later stages are still working on previous sets of inputs.

### 4.2 Pipeline registers and Inelastic Pipelines

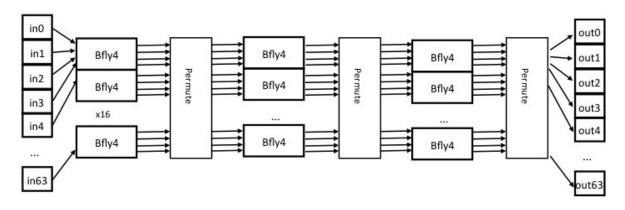


Figure 4.1: Combinational Inverse Fast Fourier Transform (IFFT)

Fig. 4.1 is a sketch of a combinational circuit for the Inverse Fast Fourier Transform function which is widely used in signal processing circuits, including the ubiquitous WiFi wireless networks. For the purposes of the current discussion the internal details of the blocks shown are not important but, briefly, the input is a set of 64 complex numbers; each "butterfly 4" block (Bfly4) performs some complex arithmetic function on 4 complex numbers, producing 4 output complex numbers; and each "Permute" block permutes its 64 input complex numbers into its output 64 complex numbers. Note that the longest combinational path will go through 3 Bfly4 blocks and 3 Permute blocks. Following the principles discussed in the last chapter, we could also created a folded version of this circuit which contains one column of Bfly4 blocks and a Permute block, in which we circulate each dataset three times.

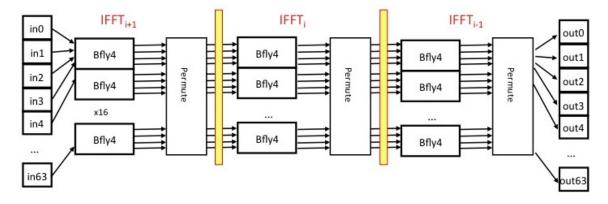


Figure 4.2: Pipelined Inverse Fast Fourier Transform (IFFT)

Fig. 4.2 shows the same circuit after the insertion of "pipeline registers" after the first

two Permute blocks. We say that the circuit has been pipelined into three "stages". On the first clock edge we present the first set of inputs, which propagates through the Bfly4s and Permute block during the subsequent clock cycle. On the second clock edge, the first register safely captures this intermediate result, and we can immediately present the second set of inputs. During the subsequent clock cycle, the first stage works on the second set of inputs while the second stage works on the first set of inputs. In steady state, as shown by the labels at the top of the diagram, the three stages are working on input sets i + 1, i and i - 1, respectively. In particular, whereas a combinational or folded circuit works on one input set at a time, this pipelined circuit works in parallel on three sets of inputs.

### 4.2.1 Inelastic Pipelines

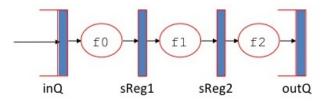


Figure 4.3: Inelastic pipeline for IFFT

Fig. 4.3 shows an abstraction of the IFFT circuit where each  $f_j$  represents a stage computation (column of Bfly4 boxes and a Permute box). InQ and OutQ represent input and output queues or FIFOs (we will discuss FIFOs in more detail in Sec. 4.3). The following code expresses the behavior of the pipeline:

```
Pipeline behavior -

rule sync_pipeline;

sReg1 <= f0 (inQ.first()); inQ.deq();

sReg2 <= f1 (sReg1);

outQ.enq (f2 (sReg2));

endrule
```

In line 2, we apply  $f_0$  to the head of the input queue and capture it in register sReg1; and we also remove the element from the queue. In line 3, we apply  $f_1$  to the previous value sitting in sReg1 and capture its result in sReg2. In line 4, we apply  $f_2$  to the previous value sitting in sReg2 and enqueue its result on the output queue.

When can this rule fire, and actually perform these actions? Our FIFOs will typically have conditions on their methods such that **first** and **deq** cannot be invoked on empty FIFOs, and **enq** cannot be invoked on full FIFOs. Thus, the rule will only fire, and move data forward through the pipe when **inQ** is not empty and **outQ** is not full. The rule could have been written with the conditions made explicit (redundantly) as follows:

Recall that, semantically, all the actions in a rule occur simultaneously and instantaneously. We also say that a rule is an *atomic* action or transaction. The code within a rule should never be read as a sequential program. For example, there is no chance that, after dequeueing a dataset from inQ, we somehow then find that we are unable to enqueue into outQ. Either the rule fires and everything in the rule happens, or it stalls and nothing happens. As will become evident through the rest of the book, this is a key and powerful property for reasoning about the correctness of circuits. It is what fundamentally distinguishes BSV from other hardware design languages.

### 4.2.2 Stalling and Bubbles

Suppose outQ is not full, but inQ is empty. The rule cannot fire, as just discussed, and we say that the pipeline is *stalled*. Unfortunately, also, any data sitting in sReg1 and sReg2 will be stuck there until fresh input data arrive allowing the pipeline to move. We'll now modify the rule to permit such data to continue moving. Once we do this, of course, we have to distinguish the situation when a pipeline register actually contains data vs. it is "empty". We do this by adding a flag bit to each pipeline register to indicate whether it contains valid data or not, as illustrated in Fig. 4.4.

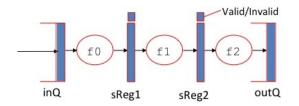


Figure 4.4: Valid bits on pipeline registers

When a pipeline register is empty, we also call this a *bubble* in the pipeline. The modified code is shown below.

```
Adding Valid bits _
    rule sync_pipeline;
1
        if (inQ.notEmpty) begin
2
            sReg1 <= f0 (inQ.first); inQ.deq;</pre>
3
            sReg1f <= Valid
4
        end
\mathbf{5}
        else
6
            sReg1f <= Invalid;</pre>
7
8
        sReg2
                <= f1 (sReg1);
9
        sReg2f <= sReg1f;</pre>
10
11
        if (sReg2f == Valid)
12
            outQ.enq (f2 (sReg2));
13
    endrule
14
```

Lines 2-7 are the first stage: if inQ has data, we move the data as usual into sReg1, and also set sReg1f to the constant Valid. If inQ has no data, we set sReg1f to Invalid.

Lines 9-10 are the second stage: we move the data through  $f_1$ , and copy the Valid state from sReg1f to sReg2f. Note that if sReg1f was Invalid, then line 9 is reading invalid data from sReg1 and therefore storing invalid data in sReg2, but it doesn't matter, since the Invalid tag accompanies it anyway. Finally, lines 12-13 are the third stage; we perform  $f_3$ and enqueue an output only if sReg2f is Valid.

Under what conditions will this rule fire? Recall that inQ.first and inQ.deq are enabled only if inQ has data. However, *bsc* will recognize that this only matters if inQ.notEmpty is true. Thus, the empty/full state of inQ does not prevent the rule from firing: if empty, we don't attempt .first or .deq and only execute the else clause of the condition; if full, we do .first and .deq etc.

Similarly, recall that outQ.enq is enabled only if outQ is not full. However, we only attempt this if sReg2f is Valid. Thus, the rule will only stall if we actually have data in sReg2 and outQ is full. The following table shows all the possible combinations of the two valid bits, inQ being empty or not, and outQ being full or not.

inQ	sReg1f	sReg2f	outQ	Rule fires?	
notEmpty	Valid	Valid	notFull	fire	
notEmpty	Valid	Valid	full	stall	
notEmpty	Valid	Invalid	notFull	fire	
notEmpty	Valid	Invalid	full	fire	
notEmpty	Invalid	Valid	notFull	fire	
notEmpty	Invalid	Valid	full	stall	
notEmpty	Invalid	Invalid	notFull	fire	
notEmpty	Invalid	Invalid	full	fire	
empty	Valid	Valid	notFull	fire	
empty	Valid	Valid	full	$\operatorname{stall}$	
empty	Valid	Invalid	notFull	fire	
empty	Valid	Invalid	full	fire	
empty	Invalid	Valid	notFull	fire	
empty	Invalid	Valid	full	stall	
empty	Invalid	Invalid	notFull	fire	
empty	Invalid	Invalid	full	fire	

### 4.2.3 Expressing data validity using the Maybe type

In this section we take a small excursion into modern language technology. There are no new hardware structures here; we just show how BSV exploits modern strong type checking for *safe* expression of hardware structures.

In the last code fragment, recall that the action sReg2 <= f1(sReg1) may be computing with invalid data. Fortunately in this case it does not matter, since we are also carrying across the accompanying bit sReg2f; if sReg1 was invalid, then the invalid data in sReg2is also marked invalid. There are many situations were we might not be so lucky, for example if the  $f_1$  computation itself involved changing some state or raising an exception, such as a divide-by-zero. To avoid such problems, we should always guard computations on potentially invalid data with a test for validity.

In BSV we can rely on strong static type checking to enforce this discipline. The standard idiom is the Maybe type which is declared as follows:

The Maybe type

```
typedef union tagged {
1
               Invalid;
       void
2
       data_t Valid;
3
   } Maybe #(type data_t)
4
     deriving (Bits, Eq);
5
```

A BSV tagged union type, similar to a union type in in C/C++, is an "either-or": either it is Invalid, in which case there is no data associated with it (void), or it is Valid, in which case it has some data of type data\_t associated with it. As in the examples in Sec. 2.4.2, the last line is a standard BSV incantation to tell bsc to choose a canonical representation in bits, and to define the == and != operators for this type.

1	data		
valid/invalid			

Figure 4.5: Representation in bits of values of Maybe type

Fig. 4.5 shows how, if a value of type t is represented in n bits, then a value of Maybe#(t) can be represented in n+1 bits. The extra bit represents the Valid/Invalid tag, and is placed at the MSB end (most significant bit). The representation always takes n+1 bits, whether Valid or Invalid: in the latter case, the lower n bits are unpredictable (effectively garbage). Note that we show this representation here only to build intuition; in practice we never think in terms of representations, just in terms of abstract Maybe types. This insulates us from having to re-examine and change a lot of distributed source code if, for example, we decide on a change in representation.

We construct a Maybe-type value using expressions like this:

		Maybe value construction	
1	tagged Invalid	// To construct an Invalid value	
2	tagged Valid x	// To construct a Valid value with data x	

We can examine Maybe-type values using the following functions:

		BSV code
1	isValid (mv)	<pre>// To test if a Maybe value is Valid or not</pre>
2	fromMaybe (d, mv)	<pre>// To extract a data value from a Maybe value</pre>

The isValid() function is applied to a Maybe value and returns boolean True if it is Valid and False if Invalid. The fromMaybe() function is applied to a default value d of type t and a Maybe#(t) value mv. If mv is Valid, the associated data is returned; if Invalid, then d is returned. Notice that in no circumstances do we ever access the garbage data in an Invalid Maybe value. This is precisely what makes tagged unions in BSV (and in languages like Haskell, ML and so on) fundamentally different from ordinary unions in C/C++ which are not type safe.

Let us now rewrite our sync\_pipeline rule using Maybe types:

```
Using Maybe types .
    module ...
1
2
        . . .
        Reg #(Maybe #(t)) sReg1 <- mkRegU;</pre>
3
        Reg #(Maybe #(t)) sReg2 <- mkRegU;</pre>
4
5
        rule sync_pipeline;
6
           if (inQ.notEmpty)
7
               sReg1
                      <= tagged Valid (f0 (inQ.first)); inQ.deq;
8
           else
9
               sReg1 <= tagged Invalid;</pre>
10
11
           sReg2 <= ( isValid (sReg1) ? tagged Valid f1 (fromMaybe (?, sReg1))</pre>
12
                                           : tagged Invalid );
13
14
           if (isValid (sReg2))
15
               outQ.enq (f2 (fromMaybe (?, sReg2)));
16
        endrule
17
18
    endmodule
19
```

In lines 3-4 we declare sReg1 and sReg2 now to contain Maybe values. In lines 8 and 10 we construct Valid and Invalid values, respectively. In lines 12-13 we test sReg1 for validity, and we construct Valid and Invalid values for sReg2, respectively. We supply a "don't care" argument (?) to fromMaybe because we have guarded this with a test for validity. Finally, in lines 15-16 we test sReg2 for validity, and use fromMaybe again to extract its value.

Instead of using the functions isValid and fromMaybe, tagged unions are more often examined using the much more readable "pattern matching" notation:

```
— Using Maybe types .
```

```
rule sync_pipeline;
1
           if (inQ.notEmpty)
2
               sReg1 <= tagged Valid (f0 (inQ.first)); inQ.deq;</pre>
3
           else
4
               sReg1 <= tagged Invalid;</pre>
5
6
           case (sReg1) matches
7
               tagged Invalid : sReg2 <= tagged Invalid;</pre>
8
               tagged Valid .x: sReg2 <= tagged Valid f1 (x);</pre>
9
           endcase
10
11
           case (sReg2) matches
12
               tagged Valid .x: outQ.enq (f2 (x));
13
           endcase
14
        endrule
15
```

Notice the keyword matches in the case statements. In each clause of the case statements, the left-hand side (before the ":") is a pattern to match against the Maybe value. In line 9, the pattern tagged Valid .x not only checks if sReg1 is a valid value, but it also binds the new variable x to the contained data; this is used in the right-hand side as an argument to f1. Note the dot "." in front of the x in the pattern: this signals that x is a new pattern variable that is effectively declared at this point, and must be bound to whatever is in the value in that position (its type is obvious, and inferred, based on its position in the pattern). The scope of x is the right-hand side of that case clause.

### 4.3 Elastic Pipelines with FIFOs between stages

In inelastic pipelines (previous section) each stage is separated by an ordinary register, and the overall behavior is expressed in a rule the combines the behavior of each stage into a single atomic (and therefore synchronous) transaction. In elastic pipelines, each stage is separated by a FIFO, and each stage's behavior is expressed as rule that may fire independently (asynchronously) with respect to the other stages.

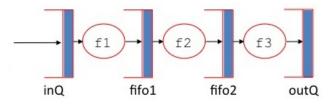


Figure 4.6: An elastic pipeline

Fig. 4.6 shows a sketch of an elastic pipeline. The BSV code structure is shown below:

```
_ Elastic pipeline _
     import FIFOF :: *;
1
2
    module ...
3
4
        . . .
        FIFOF #(t) inQ
                             <- mkFIFOF;
\mathbf{5}
        FIFOF #(t) fifo1 <- mkFIFOF;</pre>
6
        FIFOF #(t) fifo2 <- mkFIFOF;</pre>
7
        FIFOF #(t) outQ <- mkFIFOF;</pre>
8
9
        rule stage1;
10
           fifo1.enq (f1 (inQ.first); inQ.deq;
11
        endrule
12
13
        rule stage2;
14
           fifo2.enq (f2 (fifo1.first); fifo1.deq();
15
        endrule
16
17
        rule stage3;
18
           outQ.enq (f3 (fifo2.first); fifo2.deq;
19
        endrule
20
21
        . . .
     endmodule
22
```

Line 1 shows how we import the BSV FIFOF package to make FIFOs available. Lines 5-8 show typical instantiations of FIFO modules. This is followed by three rules, each of which dequeues a value from an upstream FIFO, performs a computation on the value and enqueues the result into a downstream FIFO. Each rule can fire whenever its upstream FIFO is not empty and its downstream FIFO is not full. The following table shows some of the possible situations, where NE and NF stand for "not empty" and "not full", respectively. Note that any FIFO that has capacity > 1 can be simultaneously not empty and not full.

inQ	fifo1	fifo2	outQ	stage1	stage2	stage3
NE	NE,NF	NE,NF	NF	Yes	Yes	Yes
NE	NE,NF	NE,NF	F	Yes	Yes	No
NE	NE,NF	$_{\rm NE,F}$	NF	Yes	No	Yes
NE	NE,NF	$_{\rm NE,F}$	F	Yes	No	No

Let us re-visit the question of bubbles and stalls in this context. Suppose, initially all FIFOs are empty. Then, none of the rules can fire, and the circuit lies quiescent. Now suppose a value arrives in inQ. Now, stage1 can fire, advancing the value into fifo1; then, stage2 can fire, advancing it to fifo2; finally, stage3 can fire, advancing it to outQ. Thus, the independent firing of rules allows values to flow through the pipeline whenever the FIFO ahead is not full; values never get stuck in the pipeline. Each stage can stall individually. Also note that we only ever compute and move data when an actual value is available, so there is no need for Maybe types and values here. Looking deeper, the Valid bits have effectively become full/empty bits inside the FIFOs.

What happens if, initially, inQ contains value x followed by value y? As before, stage1 can fire, advancing  $f_1(x)$  into fifo1, and then stage2 can then advance  $f_2(f_1(x))$  into fifo2. But, during this second step, is it possible for stage1 concurrently to advance  $f_1(y)$  from inQ into stage1? For this to happen, fifo1 must permit its enq method to be invoked concurrently with its first and deq methods. If not, stage1 and stage2 could not fire concurrently; and stage2 and stage3 could not fire concurrently. Adjacent stages could at best fire in alternate steps and we would hardly get what we think of as pipelined behavior! Note that it would still produce functionally correct results  $(f_3(f_2(f_1(x))))$  for each input x; but it would not meet our performance goals (throughput).

The topic of concurrent method invocation is a deep one because one needs to define the semantics carefully. If method  $m_1$  is invoked before method  $m_2$  for a module M, it is easy to define what this means:  $m_1$  peforms a transformation of M's state, and that final state is the initial state for  $m_2$ , and so on. But when  $m_1$  and  $m_2$  are invoked "concurrently", there are often choices about what this means. For example, if enq and deq are invoked concurrently on a FIFO with 1 element, are we enqueuing into a FIFO with 1 element or into an empty FIFO (because of the deq)? Neither choice is inherently right or wrong; it is a genuine option in semantic definition. BSV semantics provide a very precise vocabulary in which to specify our choices, and BSV is expressive enough to permit implementing any such choice. We shall study this topic in detail in the next chapter.

### 4.4 Final comments on Inelastic and Elastic Pipelines

Inelastic pipeline stages are typically separated by ordinary registers, and behavior (data movement) is expressed as a single rule that specifies the actions of all the stages. All the actions happen as a single, atomic transaction. We saw that, in order to handle pipeline bubbles and keep data moving, we had to introduce a lot of "flow control" control logic: valid bits to accompany data, and many conditionals in the rule to manage data movement. It was not trivial to reason about correctness, i.e., that our circuit did not accidentally drop a valid sample or overwrite one with another. The problem with writing pipelines in this style (which is the natural style in Verilog and VHDL) is that it does not evolve or scale easily; it gets more and more complex with each change, and as we go to larger pipelines. For scalability one would like a *compositional* way to define pipelines, where we define stages individually and then compose them into pipelines.

Elastic pipeline stages are typically separated by FIFOs, and each stage's behavior is expressed as an individual, local rule. Flow control is naturally encapsulated into method conditions preventing us from enqueuing into a full FIFO and from dequeuing from an empty FIFO. Correctness is more obvious in such pipelines, and they are easier to write in a compositional (modular) way. However, when we compose elastic descriptions into larger systems, we must ensure that rules can fire concurrently when they have to, so that we achieve our desired throughput.

## Chapter 5

# Introduction to SMIPS: a basic implementation without pipelining

### 5.1 Introduction to SMIPS

We now have enough foundational material to turn to the central focus of this book, namely, processor architectures. An immediate choice is: which instruction set? We can invent a new one, or reuse an existing instruction set. The advantages of the latter include validation and credibility (it has been tested in the the field and in commercial products). More importantly, we can reuse existing tool chains (compilers, linkers, debuggers) and system software (operating systems, device drivers) in order quickly to produce realistic programs to run on our system. Real system software and applications are essential for taking meaningful and credible measurements regarding efficiency and performance of hardware implementations.

In this book, we will be implementing an instruction set architecture (ISA) called SMIPS ("Simple MIPS"), which is a subset of the full MIPS32 ISA. MIPS was one of the first commercial RISC (Reduced Instruction Set Computer) processors and continues to be used in a wide range of commercial products such as Casio PDAs, Sony Playstation and Cisco internet routers (see Appendix A for some more history). MIPS implementations probably span the widest range for any commercial ISA, from simple single-issue in-order pipelines to quad-issue out-of-order superscalar processors.

Our subset, SMIPS, does not include floating point instructions, trap instructions, misaligned load/stores, branch and link instructions, or branch likely instructions. There are three SMIPS variants which are discussed in more detail in Appendix A. SMIPSv1 has only five instructions and it is mainly used as a toy ISA for instructional purposes. SMIPSv2 includes the basic integer, memory, and control instructions. It excludes multiply instructions, divide instructions, byte/halfword loads/stores, and instructions which cause arithmetic overflows. Neither SMIPSv1 noor SMIPSv2 support exceptions, interrupts, or most of the system coprocessor. SMIPSv3 is the full SMIPS ISA and includes all the instructions in our MIPS subset.

Appendix A has a detailed technical reference for SMIPS. We now sketch a high-level overview.

### 5.1.1 Instruction Set Architectures, Architecturally Visible State, and Implementation State

In computer architecture it is very important to keep a clear distinction between an Instruction Set Architecture (ISA) and its many possible implementations.

An ISA is just a definition or *specification* of an instruction set: What is the repertoire of instructions? What state elements are manipulated by instructions ("architecturally visible state")? How are instructions encoded into bits in memory? What is the meaning of the execution of each instruction (*i.e.*, how does it manipulate the architectural state)? What is the meaning of sequential execution of instructions?

Note that an ISA typically says nothing about clocks or pipelining, nor about superscalarity (issueing and executing multiple instructions per clock), nor out-of-order execution (execution in a different order from the semantic ISA specification), branch prediction, load-value prediction, nor any of a thousand other techniques an implementation may use to maximize performance, or efficiency, or both. Each of these implementation techniques will typically introduce more state elements into the processor (pipeline registers, replicated and shadow copies of registers for faster access, and more), but none of these are visible in the ISA, *i.e.*, these state elements are purely internal implementation artefacts. We thus make a distinction between "architecturally visible" state—state that can be named and manipulated in the ISA—versus "implementation state" or "micro-architectural state" which includes all the implementation-motivated state in the processor.

An ISA typically plays the role of a stable "contract" between software developers and processor implementers. Software developers—whether they directly write machine code or assembly code, or whether they write compilers that produce machine code, or whether they write application codes using compilers developed by others—use the ISA as an unambiguous specification of what their machine code programs will do. They do not have to react and revise their codes every time there is a new implementation of the given ISA.

Processor implementers, on the other hand, are freed up to explore new micro-architectural ideas to improve the performance or efficiency of their next implementation of the ISA.

This is not to say that ISAs never change. ISAs do get extended in response to new market needs. Typical examples are the new opcodes that have found their way into most modern instruction sets for graphics, high-performance computation (SIMD), encryption, and so on. But this change in ISAs is usually a relatively slow, deliberative, evolutionary process (measured in years and decades), so that implementers still have a stable target to implement within typical implementation timeframes.

### 5.1.2 SMIPS processor architectural state

Fig. 5.1 shows the basic architecturally visible state in an SMIPS processor. There are 32 general-purpose, 32-bit registers (GPRs), called r0 through r31. When read, r0 always returns a zero, and so is useful for instructions needing the constant zero. The Program Counter, or PC, is a separate 32-bit register. And, there are a few other special-purpose registers, not illustrated here.

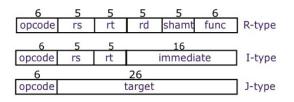
The "native" data types manipulated in the ISA are 8-bit bytes, 16-bit half-words and 32-bit words. All instructions are encoded as 32-bit values. The ISA is a so-called "Load-Store" ISA which is typical of RISC ISAs, namely that the opcodes are paritioned into one

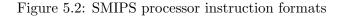
r0
:
r31
PC

Figure 5.1: Basic SMIPS processor architectural state

set of instructions that only move data between memory and registers (Load/Store), and another set of instructions that only perform ALU or control operations on data in registers. The Load/Store instructions have immediate and indexed addressing modes. For branch instructions, branch targets can be relative to the PC or indirect via an address in a register.

### 5.1.3 SMIPS processor instruction formats





There are only 3 kinds of instruction encodings in SMIPS, shown in Fig. 5.2. However, the fields are used differently by different types of instructions.

#### **Computational Instructions**

	6	5	5	5	5	6	
[	0	rs	rt	rd	0	func	$rd \leftarrow (rs) func (rt)$
[	opcode	rs	rt	imme	diate		rt ← (rs) op immediate

Load/Store Instructions

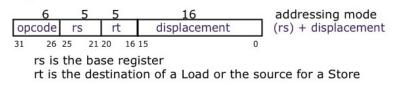


Figure 5.3: SMIPS processor Computational and Load/Store instruction formats

Fig. 5.3 shows computational and load/store instructions. The first form of computational instruction is a classical "3-operand" instruction, with two source registers and one destination register, and the opcode specified in the func field. The second form is a 2operand instruction where the  $3^{rd}$  operand is an immediate value (taken from bits in the instruction itself). In the load/store instructions, the load/store address is computed by adding rs and the displacement. For loads, rt is the destination register receiving the loaded value. For stores, rt is the source register containing the value to be stored.

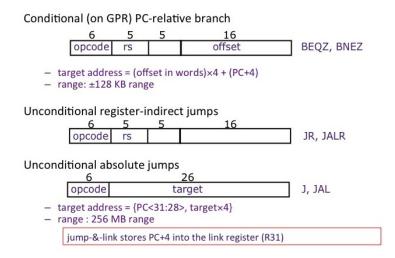


Figure 5.4: SMIPS processor control (branch) instruction formats

Fig. 5.4 shows control (branch) instructions. The first form tests register rs and conditionally branches to a target that is an offset from the current PC. The second form is an unconditional jump based on a target address in register rs. One of its uses is for returning from a function call, where rs represents the return address. The third form is an unconditional jump based on an absolute target address. The JAL (Jump And Link) opcode also saves PC+4 into r31 (also known as the Link register); this can be used for function calls, where PC+4 represents the return address.

### 5.2 Uniform interface for our processor implementations

Over the next few chapters we will be describing a series of increasingly sophisticated computer systems, each containing a processor implementation and instruction and data memories. All of them will have a uniform interface with the test environment, *i.e.*, a uniform way by which:

- a "memory image" (including the machine code for a program) is initially loaded into the computer's memory;
- the testbench "starts" the processor, allowing it to execute the program, and
- the testbench waits for the processor to complete execution of the program (or aborts the program after some time limit)

Fig. 5.5 illustrates the uniform test setup. The "top level" of each system we describe will be a BSV module called mkProc. In early versions of the code, for simplicity, we will instantiate models of instruction and data memory inside mkProc using the module constructors mkIMemory and mkDMemory. When simulation begins, these modules automatically load a file called memory.vmh which is a text file describing the contents of "virtual memory" as a series of 32-bit numbers expressed in hexadecimal format. The I- and D-memories both load a copy of the same file. The lab exercises provide these files for a number of initial memory

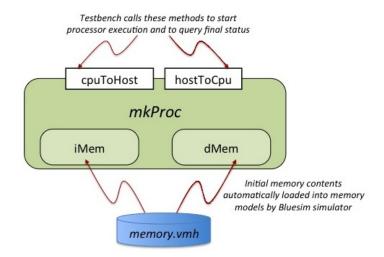


Figure 5.5: Uniform interface for running our implementations

loads. These initial-load files are typically created by cross-compilers, e.g., we compile a C application program into SMIPS binary which is placed in such a file which gets loaded into instruction memory.

The mkProc module presents the following interface to the testbench for starting and stopping the processor, and querying its status:

_	Processor Interface (in ProcTypes.bsv)
1 i	interface Proc;
2	<pre>method Action hostToCpu (Addr startpc);</pre>
3	<pre>method ActionValue #(Tuple2#(RIndx, Data)) cpuToHost;</pre>
4 e	endinterface

The hostToCpu method allows the testbench to start the processor's execution, providing it a starting PC address. The cpuToHost method returns the final status of the processor after it has halted.

### 5.3 A simple single-cycle implementation of SMIPS v1

We begin our series of increasingly sophisticated processor implementations with the simplest one—where all the functionality is expressed within a single BSV rule. It is useful as a warm-up exercise, of course, but it is also useful as a "reference implementation" against which to compare future, more complex implementations. In other words, it provides a reference specification for what the final architecturally visible state of the processor ought to be after executing a particular program starting with a particular initial state. This one-rule implementation is a BSV counterpart to a traditional "Instruction Set Simulator" (ISS), often written in C/C++, that serves as a simples reference implementation of the ISA semantics (with no complications due to implementation considerations).

Fig. 5.6 illustrates the structure of our first implementation. It instantiates a PC register, a register file rf, and instruction and data memories iMem and dMem respectively, i.e., nothing more than the ISA-specified architecturally-visible state.

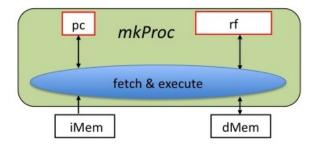


Figure 5.6: SMIPS processor 1-rule implementation

To execute a program, the processor must repeatedly do the following steps:

- Instruction Fetch: read the 32-bit word in Instruction Memory at address PC).
- Instruction Decode: separate it into its constituent fields.
- Register Read: read the source registers mentioned in the instruction, from the register file. Since many instructions have more than one source register, this requires the register file to have more than one port, for simultaneous access.
- Execute: perform any ALU op required by the instruction. This may be specified by an ALU opcode, a comparison opcode, or an address calculation for a load/store, etc.
- Memory operation: if it is a load/store instruction, perform the memory operation.
- Write back: for instructions that have destination registers, write the output value to the specified register in the register file.
- Update the PC: increment the PC (normally) or replace it with a new target value (branch instructions).

Why do we separate instruction and data memories into two separate memories? Although in principle all modern processors have the functionality of Turing Machines in that conceptually there is just a single memory and they can read and write any location in memory, in modern practice we rarely do this. Specifically, if we were to write into the part of memory holding instructions ("self-modifying code"), it would greatly complicate implementation because it would add a potential interaction between the "Instruction Fetch" and "Memory Operation" stages in the list above (the next instruction could not be fetched until the memory operation stage makes its modification). Modern practice avoids self-modifying code completely, and the part of memory that holds instructions is often protected (using virtual memory protection mechanisms) to prevent writes. In this view, therefore, instruction and data accesses can be performed independently, and hence we model them as separate memories. For reasons going back to influential early research computers developed at Harvard and Princeton Universities in the 1940s, separated-memory and unified-memory architectures are called Harvard and Princeton architectures, respectively. In this book we shall only be discussing Harvard architectures, following modern practice.

Fig. 5.7 illustrates the datapaths that will emerge for our 1-rule implementation. Of course, these datapaths are automatically created by bsc compiler when compiling our BSV code. Here is the BSV code for our 1-rule implementation:

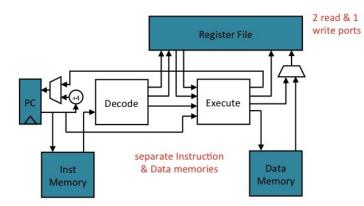


Figure 5.7: SMIPS processor 1-rule implementation datapaths

```
1 cycle implementation (in 1cyc.bsv)
    module mkProc(Proc);
1
      Reg#(Addr) pc <- mkRegU;</pre>
\mathbf{2}
      RFile
                  rf <- mkRFile;</pre>
3
      IMemory
                iMem <- mkIMemory;</pre>
4
      DMemory dMem <- mkDMemory;</pre>
5
      Cop
                 cop <- mkCop;</pre>
6
7
      rule doProc(cop.started);
8
        let inst = iMem.req(pc);
9
10
        // decode
11
        let dInst = decode(inst);
12
13
        // trace - print the instruction
14
         $display("pc: %h inst: (%h) expanded: ", pc, inst, showInst(inst));
15
16
        // read register values
17
        let rVal1 = rf.rd1(validRegValue(dInst.src1));
18
        let rVal2 = rf.rd2(validRegValue(dInst.src2));
19
20
         // Co-processor read for debugging
21
        let copVal = cop.rd(validRegValue(dInst.src1));
22
23
        // execute
^{24}
        // The fifth argument is the predicted pc, to detect if it was
25
         // mispredicted (future). Since there is no branch prediction yet,
26
         // this field is sent with an unspecified value.
27
         let eInst = exec(dInst, rVal1, rVal2, pc, ?, copVal);
28
29
         // Executing unsupported instruction. Exiting
30
         if(eInst.iType == Unsupported)
31
        begin
^{32}
           $fwrite(stderr, "Unsupported instruction at pc: %x. Exiting\n", pc);
33
```

```
$finish;
34
         end
35
36
         // memory
37
         if(eInst.iType == Ld) begin
38
           eInst.data <- dMem.req(MemReq{op: Ld, addr: eInst.addr, data: ?});</pre>
39
         end
40
         else if(eInst.iType == St) begin
41
           let d <- dMem.req(MemReq{op: St, addr: eInst.addr, data: eInst.data});</pre>
42
         end
43
44
         // write back
45
         if(isValid(eInst.dst) && validValue(eInst.dst).regType == Normal)
46
           rf.wr(validRegValue(eInst.dst), eInst.data);
47
48
         // update the pc depending on whether the branch is taken or not
49
        pc <= eInst.brTaken ? eInst.addr : pc + 4;</pre>
50
51
        // Co-processor write for debugging and stats
52
         cop.wr(eInst.dst, eInst.data);
53
      endrule
54
55
      method ActionValue#(Tuple2#(RIndx, Data)) cpuToHost;
56
        let ret <- cop.cpuToHost;</pre>
57
         $display("sending %d %d", tpl_1(ret), tpl_2(ret));
58
        return ret;
59
      endmethod
60
61
      method Action hostToCpu(Bit#(32) startpc) if (!cop.started);
62
         cop.start;
63
        pc <= startpc;</pre>
64
      endmethod
65
    endmodule
66
```

Line 2 declares the mkProc module with the previously described Proc interface. Lines 3-7 instantiate the sub-modules: the PC register, a register file, the instruction and data memories, and cop, a standard *co-processor*. The co-processor is the administrative controller of the processor, allowing it to start, stop, keeping a record of time (cycle count), number of instructions executed, and so on.

Lines 9-54 specify the single rule that does everything, and it is only enabled when cop.started is true. It more-or-less follows the itemized list described earlier: Line 10 is the Instruction Fetch; line 13 is Instruction Decode. Lines 19-20 perform the two source register reads (the validRegValue functions are needed because not all instructions have two source registers). Ignore line 23 for now; it's using the co-processor for debugging. Line 28 is Execute. Lines 30-35 detect bad instructions (not supported in this ISA). Lines 37-43 do the memory operation, if any. Line 46-47 do the Write Back, if any, and line 50 updates the PC. Lines 56-65 implement the Proc interface methods.

Note that all the functions and methods used in this rule including iMem.req(), decode(), rf.rd1(), rf.rd2(), exec(), dMem.req(), and rf.wr() are instantaneous (purely combinational). In fact they must be, since they are in a single rule.

Let us dig a little deeper into the BSV code. We start with some type definitions:

```
Some type definitions (in ProcTypes.bsv) -
   typedef Bit#(5) RIndx;
1
\mathbf{2}
   typedef enum {Unsupported, Alu, Ld, St, J, Jr, Br, MfcO, MtcO} IType
3
            deriving(Bits, Eq);
4
   typedef enum {Eq, Neq, Le, Lt, Ge, Gt, AT, NT} BrFunc
\mathbf{5}
            deriving(Bits, Eq);
6
7
   typedef enum {Add, Sub, And, Or, Xor, Nor,
                   Slt, Sltu, LShift, RShift, Sra} AluFunc
8
            deriving(Bits, Eq);
9
```

Line 1 defines a register index to be a 5-bit value (since we have 32 registers in SMIPS). The next few lines describe symbolic names for various opcode functions. The following code describes a decoded instruction:

	I	Decoded instructions (in ProcTypes.bsv)
1	<pre>typedef struct {</pre>	
2	IType	iType;
3	AluFunc	aluFunc;
4	BrFunc	brFunc;
5	Maybe#(FullIndx)	dst;
6	Maybe#(FullIndx)	src1;
7	Maybe#(FullIndx)	src2;
8	Maybe#(Data)	imm;
9	<pre>} DecodedInst deriv</pre>	ving(Bits, Eq);

The decode() function is in the file Decode.bsv and has the following outline:

```
_- Decode function outline (in Decode.bsv) \_-
    function DecodedInst decode(Data inst);
1
      DecodedInst dInst = ?;
2
      let opcode = inst[ 31 : 26 ];
3
                  = inst[ 25 : 21 ];
      let rs
4
                  = inst[ 20 : 16 ];
      let rt
\mathbf{5}
                  = inst[ 15 : 11 ];
      let rd
6
      let shamt = inst[ 10 : 6 ];
7
      let funct = inst[ 5 : 0 ];
8
      let imm
                  = inst[ 15 : 0 ];
9
      let target = inst[ 25 :
                                 0];
10
11
      case (opcode)
12
         ... fill out the dInst structure accordingly ...
13
      endcase
14
```

## return dInst;endfunction

We show below one of the case arms, corresponding to I-Type ALU instructions:

```
_{-} Decode function; I-type section (in Decode.bsv) _{-}
       . . .
1
      case (opcode)
2
         opADDIU, opSLTI, opSLTIU, opANDI, opORI, opXORI, opLUI:
3
        begin
4
           dInst.iType = Alu;
5
           dInst.aluFunc = case (opcode)
6
             opADDIU, opLUI: Add;
7
             opSLTI: Slt;
8
             opSLTIU: Sltu;
9
             opANDI: And;
10
             opORI: Or;
11
             opXORI: Xor;
12
           endcase;
13
           dInst.dst = validReg(rt);
14
           dInst.src1 = validReg(rs);
15
           dInst.src2 = Invalid;
16
           dInst.imm = Valid(case (opcode)
17
             opADDIU, opSLTI, opSLTIU: signExtend(imm);
18
             opLUI: {imm, 16'b0};
19
             default: zeroExtend(imm);
20
           endcase);
21
          dInst.brFunc = NT;
22
         end
^{23}
         ... other case arms ...
24
25
      endcase
```

Please refer to the file Decode.bsv to see the full function. At the bottom of the function is a case-arm "catch all" that handles bad instructions, *i.e.*, 32-bit encodings that do not conform to any of the specified instructions:

```
Decoding unsupported instructions (in Decode.bsv)
1
       . . .
      case
\mathbf{2}
         ... other case arms
3
4
         default:
\mathbf{5}
         begin
6
           dInst.iType = Unsupported;
7
           dInst.dst = Invalid;
8
           dInst.src1 = Invalid;
9
           dInst.src2 = Invalid;
10
           dInst.imm = Invalid;
11
```

```
dInst.brFunc = NT;
12
         end
13
       endcase
14
15
       if (dInst.dst matches tagged Valid .dst
16
           &&& dst.regType == Normal
17
           &&& dst.idx == 0)
18
         dInst.dst = tagged Invalid;
19
20
       return dInst;
^{21}
    endmodule
22
```

In lines 16-19 we handle the case where the destination register has been specified as r0 in the instruction; we convert this into an "invalid" destination (which will cause the write back to ignore this).

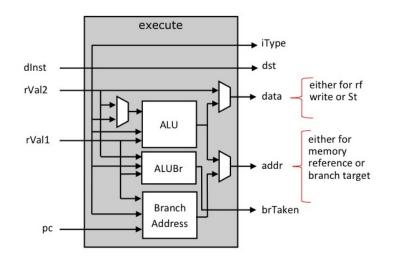


Figure 5.8: SMIPS processor Execute function

Fig. 5.8 illustrates the exec() function (purely combinational). The output of the function is a structure like this:

	E	Executed Instructions (in ProcTypes.bsv)
1	<pre>typedef struct {</pre>	
2	IType	iType;
3	Maybe#(FullIndx)	dst;
4	Data	data;
5	Addr	addr;
6	Bool	mispredict;
7	Bool	brTaken;
8	<pre>} ExecInst derivin</pre>	g(Bits, Eq);

The code below shows the top-level of the exec function:

```
Execute Function (in Exec.bsv)
    function ExecInst exec(DecodedInst dInst, Data rVal1, Data rVal2, Addr pc,
1
                             Addr ppc, Data copVal);
2
      ExecInst eInst = ?;
3
      Data aluVal2 = isValid(dInst.imm) ? validValue(dInst.imm) : rVal2;
4
5
      let aluRes = alu(rVal1, aluVal2, dInst.aluFunc);
6
      eInst.iType = dInst.iType;
8
9
      eInst.data = dInst.iType == Mfc0?
10
                      copVal :
11
                    dInst.iType == MtcO?
12
                      rVal1 :
13
                    dInst.iType==St?
14
                      rVal2 :
15
                    (dInst.iType==J || dInst.iType==Jr) ?
16
                      (pc+4) :
17
                      aluRes;
18
19
      let brTaken = aluBr(rVal1, rVal2, dInst.brFunc);
20
      let brAddr = brAddrCalc(pc, rVal1, dInst.iType,
21
                                validValue(dInst.imm), brTaken);
22
      eInst.mispredict = brAddr != ppc;
23
24
      eInst.brTaken = brTaken;
25
      eInst.addr = (dInst.iType == Ld || dInst.iType == St) ? aluRes : brAddr;
26
27
      eInst.dst = dInst.dst;
28
29
      return eInst;
30
    endfunction
31
```

In lines 4-6 we use the alu() function to compute an ALU result, assuming it is an ALU-type instruction. In lines 10-18, we set the output eInst.data field, which could be from the co-processor, rVal1 or rVal2, a branch target (PC+4) for J and Jr instructions, or the ALU output aluRes. In lines 20-25, we compute the branch operation, assuming it's a branch instruction. Finally we set eInst.addr in line 26, which is the aluRes for Ld and St instruction, else the branch address.

For readers with a purely software background, the above code may appear a little strange in that we seem to be performing both the ALU and the branch computations, whatever the opcode. But remember that this is how hardware is typically structured: both computations always exists (they are both statically elaborated and laid out in hardware) and they both do their work, and the final result is just selected with a multiplexer.

The alu() and branch functions used above, are shown next:

ALU and Branch parts of Execute Function (in Exec.bsv) - function Data alu(Data a, Data b, AluFunc func);

```
Data res = case(func)
2
         Add
               : (a + b);
3
         Sub
               : (a - b);
4
                : (a & b);
         And
5
                : (a | b);
         Or
6
               : (a ^ b);
         Xor
7
         Nor
               : ~(a | b);
8
         Slt
                : zeroExtend( pack( signedLT(a, b) ) );
9
         Sltu : zeroExtend( pack( a < b ) );</pre>
10
         LShift: (a << b[4:0]);
11
         RShift: (a >> b[4:0]);
12
                : signedShiftRight(a, b[4:0]);
         Sra
13
      endcase;
14
      return res;
15
    endfunction
16
17
    function Bool aluBr(Data a, Data b, BrFunc brFunc);
18
      Bool brTaken = case(brFunc)
19
        Eq : (a == b);
20
        Neq : (a != b);
21
        Le : signedLE(a, 0);
22
            : signedLT(a, 0);
        Lt
23
        Ge : signedGE(a, 0);
24
        Gt : signedGT(a, 0);
25
        AT : True;
26
            : False;
        NT
27
      endcase;
28
      return brTaken;
29
    endfunction
30
31
    function Addr brAddrCalc(Addr pc, Data val, IType iType, Data imm, Bool taken);
32
      Addr pcPlus4 = pc + 4;
33
      Addr targetAddr = case (iType)
34
        J : {pcPlus4[31:28], imm[27:0]};
35
        Jr : val;
36
        Br : (taken? pcPlus4 + imm : pcPlus4);
37
        Alu, Ld, St, MfcO, MtcO, Unsupported: pcPlus4;
38
      endcase;
39
      return targetAddr;
40
    endfunction
41
```

## 5.4 Expressing our single-cycle CPU with BSV, versus prior methodologies

In the old days of CPU design, a designer may have begun the process by first drawing a schematic of the datapath of the single-cycle CPU, as illustrated in Fig. 5.9. The red

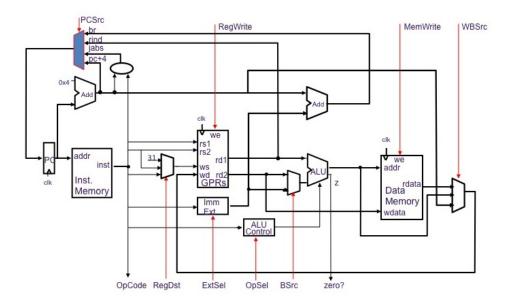


Figure 5.9: Datapath schematic for 1-cycle implementation

vertical arrows represent control signals—by asserting/deasserting them appropriately, one can steer data from the right sources into the right functions and into the right destination state elements.

Opcode	ExtSel	BSrc	OpSel	MemW	RegW	WBSrc	RegDst	PCSrc
ALU	*	Reg	Func	no	yes	ALU	rd	pc+4
ALUi	sExt <sub>16</sub>	Imm	Op	no	yes	ALU	rt	pc+4
ALUiu	uExt <sub>16</sub>	Imm	Ор	no	yes	ALU	rt	pc+4
LW	sExt <sub>16</sub>	Imm	+	no	yes	Mem	rt	pc+4
SW	sExt <sub>16</sub>	Imm	+	yes	no	*	*	pc+4
BEQZ <sub>z=0</sub>	sExt <sub>16</sub>	*	0?	no	no	*	*	br
$BEQZ_{z=1}$	sExt <sub>16</sub>	*	0?	no	no	*	*	pc+4
J	*	*	*	no	no	*	*	jabs
JAL	*	*	*	no	yes	PC	R31	jabs
JR	*	*	*	no	no	*	*	rind
JALR	*	*	*	no	yes	PC	R31	rind

 BSrc = Reg / Imm
 WBSrc = ALU / Mem / PC

 RegDst = rt / rd / R31
 PCSrc = pc+4 / br / rind / jabs

Figure 5.10: Control table for Datapath Schematic for 1-cycle implementation

Next, the designer may create a "control table" as shown in Fig. 5.10, showing what values to set the control signals under each possible set of inputs coming from the circuit (signals like OpCode, zero?, etc.). This control table can be implemented, for example, in a ROM, with the inputs representing the address and the outputs representing the control signals (or, the ROM could be further optimized into custom logic).

You can imagine the sheer labor involved in creating such a datapath schematic and control table. And, you can imagine the labor involved in accommodating change: to fix a bug in the logic, or to add new functionality. In the 1990s people started changing this methodology to describe these circuits in RTL languages instead (Verilog and VHDL). Although this greatly reduced the labor of creating and maintaining schematics and control tables, RTL is not much of a behavioral abstraction above schematics in that it has the same clock-based, globally synchronous view of the world. Similar timing errors and race conditions can occur almost as easily with RTL as with schematics.

The description of these circuits in BSV is a radical shift in how we think about and specify circuits. In addition to powerful types, object-oriented module structure and static elaboration, BSV's rules are a dramatically different way of thinking of circuit behavior in terms of instantaneous atomic transactions. Datapaths and control logic are automatically synthesized from such specifications by *bsc*.

### 5.5 Separating the Fetch and Execute actions

Let us turn our attention back to our BSV description, and think about the performance of our 1-rule design. Essentially the steps itemized in the list in Sec. 5.3 (Instruction Fetch, Decode, Register Read, Execute, Mem, Write Back) form a long sequential chain of logic, since each step depends on the previous one. Thus, the total combinational delay represents a limit on how fast we can clock the state elements; we must wait for the full combinational delay to allow signals to propagate all the way through:

 $t_{clock} > t_{mem} + t_{fetch} + t_{dec} + t_{regread} + t_{exec} + t_{mem} + t_{wb}$ 

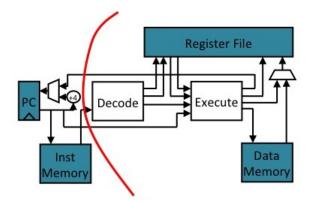


Figure 5.11: Splitting our implementation into 2 rules

Suppose we split our rule into two parts, as illustrated in Fig. 5.11, *i.e.*, separate the Fetch part into its own rule. Then our timing equation changes to:

$$t_{clock} > max(t_{mem}, t_{fetch} + t_{dec} + t_{regread} + t_{exec} + t_{mem} + t_{wb})$$

*i.e.*, it would allow us potentially to run the overall circuit at a higher clock speed.

In order to accomplish this, we introduce a register ir to hold the output of the Fetch stage (the 32-bit value from iMem), as shown in Fig. 5.12. We also introduce another register

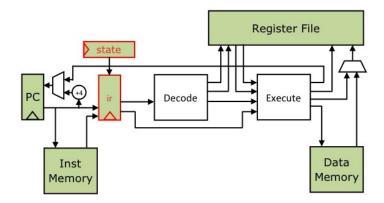


Figure 5.12: Extra state for splitting our implementation into 2 rules

state to keep track of whether we are executing the Fetch stage or one of the later stages. These two, ir and state, are our first examples of non-architectural state, i.e., state that is not mentioned in the ISA but is introduced for implementation purposes. Below we show the new version of mkProc, which is minimally changed from the original 1-rule version:

```
_ 2-rule processor (in 2cyc_harvard.bsv) _
    typedef enum {Fetch, Execute} State deriving (Bits, Eq);
1
\mathbf{2}
    module mkProc(Proc);
3
       ... same sub-modules as before ...
4
\mathbf{5}
       Reg#(State) state <- mkReg(Fetch);</pre>
                                                  // NEW
6
       Reg#(Data)
                        ir <- mkRegU;</pre>
                                                   // NEW
7
8
       rule doFetch(cop.started && state == Fetch);
9
         let inst = iMem.req(pc);
10
11
         $display("pc: %h inst: (%h) expanded: ", pc, inst, showInst(inst));
12
13
         // store the instruction in a register
14
         ir <= inst;</pre>
15
16
         // switch to execute state
17
         state <= Execute;</pre>
18
       endrule
19
20
       rule doExecute(cop.started && state == Execute);
^{21}
         let inst = ir;
22
23
         let dInst = decode(inst);
24
         ... rest of this rule is same as original doProc rule in 1-cycle version ...
25
26
         . . .
27
         // switch back to fetch
28
         state <= Fetch;</pre>
29
```

30	endrule
31	
32	•••
33	endmodule

Line 1 declares a type for the state of the 2-rule system: it is either in the Fetch rule, or it is in the Execute rule. Inside the module, lines 6-7 instantiate the two new registers state and |verb|ir|. The original doProc rule is now split into two rules, doFetch and doExecute; we add state==Fetch and state==Execute to the rule conditions. At the end of doFetch, we store the retreived instruction in the ir register and change state to Execute. At the start of the doExecute rule we retrieve the just-stored instruction from ir, and proceed as before. At the end of the rule we set state to Fetch to re-enable the doFetch rule.

Thus, the doFetch and doExecute rules will alternate performing the fetch and execute functions.

### 5.5.1 Analysis

Have we really gained anything by splitting into two rules and potentially running them at a faster clock speed? In fact we have not: since the two rules alternate, the total time to execute an instruction becomes two clock cycles, and unless we were able to more than double the clock speed (unlikely!) we will be running no faster than before. And, we're now using more state (and therefore likely more hardware area and power).

However, this exercise has demonstrated one key BSV principle: *refinement*. In BSV, one often refines a design by splitting rules into smaller rules (typically with a goal of increasing clock speed). The strength of rule semantics is that this can often be done independently in different parts of a design, *i.e.*, refining a rule typically does not break other parts of the design because we typically do not have tight timing assumptions (as is common in RTL languages). This allows us incrementally to refine a design towards meeting particular performance goals.

This exercise has also set the stage for the real payoff which we shall start exploring in the next chapter, when we start pipelining the two (and more) rules, so that, while the Execute rule is doing its thing, the Fetch rule is busy fetching the next instruction concurrently within the same clock.

# Chapter 6

# **SMIPS:** Pipelined

We ended the last chapter with a 2-rule version of the basic MIPS processor, illustrated in Fig. 5.12. Other than demonstrating how to refine a BSV program by breaking larger rules into smaller rules, it did not buy us anything either in terms of overall performance or area. Performance was not improved since the two rules alternate, based on the **state** register: the total time per instruction is the same, it just happens in two rules one after the other, instead of in one rule. And area likely increased due to the introduction of the non-architectural state registers **state** and **ir**.

In this chapter we will explore how to execute the two rules concurrently (in the same clock), so that they operate as a pipeline. This should substantially improve the performance (throughput) compared to the original 1-rule version, since the smaller rules should allow us to increase clock speed, and we should be able to complete one instruction on every clock.

## 6.1 Hazards

When creating a processo pipeline, we typically encounter three kinds of *hazards*:

- Control Hazards: We do not really know the next instruction to fetch until we have at least decoded the current instruction. If the decoded instruction is not a branch instruction, the next instruction is likely to be at PC+4. If it is a branch instruction, we may not know the new PC until the end of the Execute stage. Even if it is not a branch instruction, it may raise an trap/exception later in the pipeline (such as divide-by-zero, or page fault), requiring the next instruction to be from a trap/exception handler.
- *Structural Hazard*: Two instructions in the pipeline may require the same resource at the same time. For example, in Princeton architectures, both the Fetch and the Execute stages need to access the same memory.
- Data Hazard: For example, if one instruction writes into register 13, a later instruction that reads register 13 must wait until the data has been computed and is available. In general, when different stages of the pipeline read and write common state (the register file being just one example), we must be careful about the order of reads and writes.

These are general issues encountered in many kinds of pipelines, not just processors. Simple, pure "feed-forward" pipelines such as the IFFT pipeline of Chapter 4, or an arithmetic multiplier pipeline, typically do not encounter any of these hazards, because there is no dependence between successive samples flowing through the pipeline. However it is in the very nature of instructions in an ISA that they depend on each other, and so we encounter all these kinds of hazards in their full glory. This leads to significantly more complex mechanisms in order to maintain pipeline flow. In fact, dealing with these issues is the essence of creative computer architecture design.

We will focus on control hazards in this chapter, and address the other types of hazards in later chapters.

#### 6.1.1 Modern processors are distributed systems

Historically, the Computer Science topic of *Distributed Systems* grew in the context of Local Area Networks and Wide Area Networks based on the recognition that, in such systems, communication is not free. In particular,

- 1. There is no instantly visible or updatable global state. Entities only have local state, and they can only send and receive messages to other entities to query or update remote state.
- 2. Messages cannot be delivered instantaneously; there is a discernable latency, and this latency may not be predictable.
- 3. Even between the same two entities, messages may get re-ordered, i.e., they may arrive in an order different from the order in which they were sent.
- 4. Messages may get dropped, spuriously generated, duplicated, or corrupted along the way.

At first glance it may seem startling to refer to a single chip that occupies a few square millimeters of silicon (a modern processor or System-on-a-chip) as a "distributed system", but remember that space and time are relative. Modern processors run at multi-gigahertz speeds, and communicating across a chip has a discernable delay, and is best addressed by message-passing between relatively independent entities instead of in terms of any globally visible state. Modern chip designers also talk about "GALS" methodology (Globally Asynchronous, Locally Synchronous), and this is just another manifestation of the same observation. Modern system-level communication protocols, such as PCI Express and Intel's Quick Path Interconnect (QPI) even deal with the complexities of unreliable message delivery (bullet items 3 and 4 above).

In summary, it is fruitful to apply the insights and solutions developed in the field of Distributed Systems to the design of modern processor architectures. This insight pervades our approach. In this chapter, the evolution from a globally updated PC to an "epoch" based solution follows this trajectory.

## 6.2 Two-stage pipelined SMIPS

Fig. 6.1 illustrates a two-stage pipelined version of our SMIPS processor. Let us compare this with Fig. 5.12. First, we have replaced the "PC+4" function in the Fetch stage with

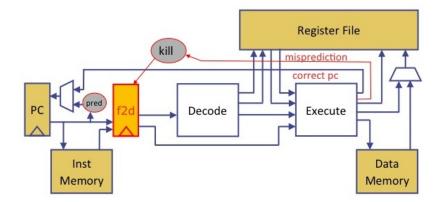


Figure 6.1: Two-stage pipelined SMIPS

a "pred" (for "prediction") function. The Fetch stage is *speculating* or *predicting* what the next PC will be, and PC+4 is a good guess, since the majority of instructions are not likely to be branch instructions affecting the control flow. But as we go along we will make more sophisticated predictors that use the current PC to predict the next PC, learning from instruction executions. For example, a particular branch instruction (at a particular PC) may be executed multiple times (due to loops or repeated calls to the same function), and past behavior may be a good predictor of the next behavior.

But what if we predict wrong, e.g., we predict (in the Fetch stage) that a conditional branch is taken, but we later discover (in the Execute stage) that it is not taken. Then we would have fetched one or more "wrong path" instructions and injected them into the pipeline. We need machinery to kill these instructions (in particular, they should have no effect on any architecturally-visible state), and to redirect the Fetch stage to start fetching from the correct PC. In Fig. 6.1 this is depicted as a "kill" function that clears the intermediate f2d register, which is the only thing in this design that can hold wrong-path instructions.

#### 6.2.1 A first step: a single rule, inelastic solution

As a first step, we can encode prediction, redirection and kill into a single rule:

1-rule pipelined implementation

```
rule doPipeline;
1
          // ---- Fetch
2
          let inst = iMem.req(pc);
3
          let ppc = nextAddr(pc);
                                        // predicted pc
4
          let newPc = ppc;
\mathbf{5}
          let newIr = tagged Valid (Fetch2Decode{pc:pc,ppc:ppc,inst:inst});
6
7
          // ---- Execute
8
           if (f2d matches tagged Valid .x) begin
9
              let inpc = x.pc;
10
              let ppc = x.ppc;
11
              let inst = x.inst;
12
              let dInst = decode(inst);
13
```

```
... register fetch ...;
14
              let eInst = exec(dInst, rVal1, rVal2, inpc, ppc);
15
              ...memory operation ...
16
              ... register file update ...
17
              if (eInst.mispredict) begin
18
                  newIr = tagged Invalid;
19
                 newPc = eInst.addr;
20
              end
21
           end
22
           pc <= newPc; f2d <= newIr;</pre>
23
        endrule
24
```

Prediction is encoded in the nextAddr(pc) function, which can be as simple as pc+4. Redirection happens because we initially bind newPC to ppc, but if we encounter a misprediction we rebind newPC to the corrected PC (eInst.addr), and we update pc to final binding of newPc. Killing a wrong-path instruction happens because we initially bind newIr to the (decoded) predicted instruction, and in the case we discover a misprediction (eInst.mispredict is True) we rebind newIr to tagged Invalid, and this final binding is stored in the f2d register. Pipelining happens because Fetch and Execute both execute in each rule execution.

This solution works, but is quite complex in lumping all the logic into one big rule. It will be very difficult to extend this to handle more complex features such as multi-cycle memory accesses or functional units, variable latencies due to cache misses and data-dependent functional unit latencies, multiple branch predictors and resolvers, etc.

#### 6.2.2 A second step: a two-rule, somewhat elastic solution

A more modular solution would be to evolve towards an elastic pipeline with FIFO coupling, as discussed in Chapter 4. Let us now think of f2d not as a register with a Valid bit, but as a FIFO with enq, first, deq and clear methods. The new code will look like this:

```
2-rule pipelined implementation -
       rule doFetch;
1
          let inst = iMem.req(pc);
2
          let ppc = nextAddr(pc);
                                         // predicted pc
3
          pc <= ppc;</pre>
4
          f2d.enq (tagged Valid (Fetch2Decode{pc:pc,ppc:ppc,inst:inst}));
\mathbf{5}
       endrule
6
7
       rule doExecute;
8
          let x = f2d.first;
9
          let inpc = x.pc;
10
          let ppc = x.ppc;
11
          let inst = x.inst;
12
          let dInst = decode(inst);
13
           ... register fetch ...;
14
          let eInst = exec(dInst, rVal1, rVal2, inpc, ppc);
15
```

```
...memory operation ...
16
            ... register file update ...
17
            if (eInst.mispredict) begin
18
               pc <= eInst.addr;</pre>
19
               f2d.clear;
20
            end
21
            else
22
               f2d.deq;
23
        endrule
24
```

The doFetch rule now immediately updates pc to the predicted value. In the doExecute rule, when we encounter a misprediction (eInst.mispredic is True), we write the correct value into the pc register and simultaneously clear the f2d FIFO.

Can these rules execute concurrently, assuming the FIFO f2d allows concurrent invocations of its methods enq, first, deq and clear? The answer is yes, but there are many subtleties about what we mean by "concurrent", which are explored in detail in Chapter 7.

The key point to note here is that atomicity of rules guarantees correct operation. Rule doFetch contains three activities, F1: read pc, F2: write pc, and F3: update f2d. Rule doExecute contains two activities, E1: write pc and E2: update f2d. Anyone who has done any parallel programming will immediately recognize this as a potentially dangerous situation. If F1, F2, and F3 can interleave with E1 and E2, bad things can happen: For example, the interleaving F1,E1,F2 can leave a mispredicted value in pc. The interleaving F1,F2,E1,E2,F3 can leave a mispredicted instruction in f2d. Such interleavings are ruled out by atomicity of rules— either E1,E2,E3 happen before F1,F2, or vice versa; either way, we get correct operation.

This 2-rule solution is more elastic and decoupled than the previous 1-rule solution, but it still has a number of features which will not scale well to more complex pipelines. First, the Fetch and Execute sections (each of which will themselves evolve into multi-stage pipelines later) both access a common piece of global state, the pc, and we are relying on an instantaneous update to manage redirection on misprediction.

Second, f2d was the only piece of state holding speculative instructions, which could be killed with a simple FIFO clear operation. As we evolve to deeper pipelines, there will be multiple state elements holding speculative instructions, and we may be nested several levels deep in branch predictions so that when a branch resolves we must kill only some, and not all of the speculative instructions. It will be hard to perform all this activity in a single, instantaneous, atomic action.

#### 6.2.3 A third step: a two-rule, elastic solution using epochs

We first relax one aspect of our tight coupling, where we instantly kill all speculative instructions as soon as we discover a misprediction. We add an "epoch" register to the processor state in the Fetch stage, as illustrated in Fig. 6.2. Let's assume its value is initially 0. The Fetch stage attaches the value in this register to every instruction it sends into f2d. In the Execute stage, we do two new things:

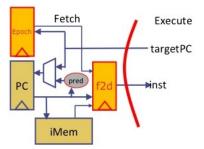


Figure 6.2: Adding an epoch register to the Fetch stage

- When we discover a misprediction, we increment the epoch register simultaneously with updating pc with the redirected value.
- We discard (i.e., kill) each instruction that we receive from f2d whose attached epoch number is lower than the latest value of the epoch register.

Thus, only wrong-path instructions will be accompanied by a wrong epoch number, and these will be killed, one by one, as they arrive in the Execute stage. We have eliminated the need instantly to clear the f2d FIFO. This will have a big payoff as we go to deeper pipelines. Here is some code to express the idea.

```
\_ Adding an epoch register \_
        rule doFetch ;
1
           let inst=iMem.req(pc);
2
           let ppc=nextAddr(pc);
3
           pc <= ppc;</pre>
4
           f2d.eng (Fetch2Decode{pc:pc,ppc:ppc,epoch:epoch,inst:inst});
\mathbf{5}
        endrule
6
7
        rule doExecute;
8
           let x=f2d.first;
9
           let inpc=x.pc;
10
           let inEp=x.epoch;
11
           let ppc = x.ppc;
12
           let inst = x.inst;
13
           if (inEp == epoch) begin
14
               let dInst = decode(inst);
15
               ... register fetch ...;
16
               let eInst = exec(dInst, rVal1, rVal2, inpc, ppc);
17
               ...memory operation ...
18
               ...rf update ...
19
               if (eInst.mispredict) begin
20
                  pc <= eInst.addr;</pre>
21
                  epoch <= inEp + 1;</pre>
22
               end
23
           end
^{24}
           f2d.deq;
25
        endrule
26
```

In lines 5 and 11, we have assumed an extension to the Fetch2Decode type now to include an epoch field. The if-structure on lines 14-23 ignores instructions with the wrong epoch number. On line 21, on realizing a misprediction, we increment the epoch number.

We have described the epoch as a continuously incrementing number. So, how large should we size the epoch register (how many bits)? Remember that processors may execute trillions of instructions between reboots. Fortunately, a little thought should persuade us that, for the above 2-stage pipeline, just 1 bit is enough. Across the whole system, at any given time, we are only dealing with two epochs: the latest epoch, and possibly one previous epoch if there are still wrong-path instructions in the pipeline. Thus, updating the epoch register is a matter of inverting 1 bit.

#### 6.2.4 A final step: a two-rule, elastic, fully-decoupled, distributed solution

We can refine our solution towards a truly decoupled one using the following observation. Suppose the Execute stage, instead of instantly updating the pc and epoch registers, sends a message with the new values to the Fetch stage, which is delivered after some delay. Functionally, nothing would go wrong. It just means that the Fetch stage may fetch a few more wrong-path instructions, but they will all be discarded anyway in the Execute stage because they'll have the wrong epoch. But the Execute stage now also needs a local copy of the correct epoch which it uses in line 14 of the code above to recognize wrong-path instructions.

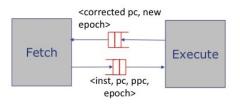


Figure 6.3: Decoupled structure

This leads to the truly decoupled, distributed structure shown in Fig. 6.3. The two FIFOs represent message channels between the two entities, the Fetch and Execute modules. The exact delay in these channels will not affect functional correctness (they will affect performance of because delays in killing wrong-path instructions).

The final 2-stage pipeline solution is shown in Fig. 6.4. Each stage has its own epoch register, **fEpoch** and **eEpoch**. As before, **f2d** is a forward-direction FIFO, and now **redirect** is a reverse-direction FIFO. The Fetch stage updates **pc** and **fEpoch** based on the values it receives through **redirect**. Here is the code for this solution:

```
Decoupled solution

module mkProc(Proc);

Fifo#(Fetch2Execute) f2d <- mkFifo;

Reg#(Bool) fEpoch <- mkReg(False);

Reg#(Bool) eEpoch <- mkReg(False);
```

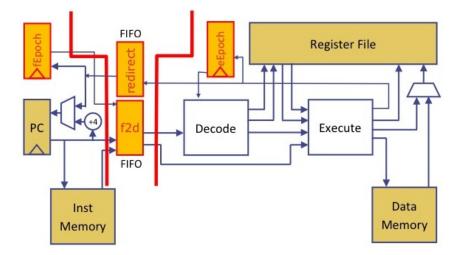


Figure 6.4: Decoupled solution

```
rule doFetch;
\overline{7}
           let inst = iMem.req(pc);
8
           if (execRedirect.notEmpty) begin
9
              fEpoch <= !fEpoch; pc <= execRedirect.first;</pre>
10
              execRedirect.deq;
11
           end
12
           else begin
13
              let ppc = nextAddrPredictor (pc);
14
              pc <= ppc;</pre>
15
              f2d.enq (Fetch2Execute{pc:pc, ppc:ppc, inst:inst, epoch:fEpoch});
16
           end
17
        endrule
18
19
        rule doExecute;
20
           let inst = f2d.first.inst;
^{21}
           let pc
                      = f2d.first.pc;
22
                      = f2d.first.ppc;
           let ppc
23
           let inEp = f2d.first.epoch;
24
           if (inEp == eEpoch) begin
25
              let dInst = decode(inst);
26
               ... register fetch ...;
27
              let eInst = exec(dInst, rVal1, rVal2, inpc, ppc);
^{28}
              if (eInst.mispredict) begin
29
                  execRedirect.enq (eInst.addr);
30
                  eEpoch <= !inEp;</pre>
31
              end
32
           end
33
           f2d.deq;
34
        endrule
35
    endmodule
36
```

Since we need only 1 bit to represent an epoch, and since epoch numbers always toggle between 0 and 1, we don't actually have to carry any epoch number on a redirect message. The very arrival of the message is a signal to toggle it. Thus, the redirect queue (execRedirect) only carries PC values.

In the Fetch rule, if there is any message in the redirect queue, we update pc and fEpoch (toggle it). Otherwise, we perform the normal instruction fetch and send it into f2d. In the Execute rule, on line 25, if the instruction's epoch is not equal to the actual current epoch eEpoch, we ignore the instruction. If we resolve a misprediction we send eInst.addr back to the Fetch stage via the execRedirect queue, and immediately update the local, actual epoch number eEpoch.

If we revert back for a moment to the abstract idea that the epoch is a continuously incrementing number, notice that fEpoch is an approximation of the real epoch, eEpoch. Further, it is always true that  $fEpoch \leq eEpoch$ , i.e., it always approximates it from below, giving us safe behavior. In later chapters, as we refine to more pipeline stages and have more sophisticated speculation, each stage will have its own copy of the epoch number, and this property will continue to hold, i.e., each stage's local epoch register will approximate from below the epoch registers of downstream stages.

# 6.3 Conclusion

In this chapter we developed a decoupled 2-stage SMIPS pipeline implementation, illustrating the principle of treating the design as a distributed system of independent entities communicating only with messages. Decoupling simplifies reasoning about correctness, and simplifies the independent refinement of entities (stages) for higher performance. We have still been somewhat informal about what we mean by "concurrent" execution of rules (which is necessary for actually getting pipelined behavior); this will be addressed in the chapter on rule semantics.

# Chapter 7

# Rule Semantics and Event Ordering

## Parallelism within rules, and Concurrent rules within clocks

## 7.1 Introduction

We now examine rule semantics in more detail, which we have discussed informally so far. In particular, we will examine two key semantic questions:

- What actions can be combined into an individual rule, and what does it mean to execute a rule?
- What rules can execute within a clock cycle; in what order, and what does it mean?

We will see that in both cases, it comes down to a fairly simple consideration on ordering constraints on pairs of methods.

We use the words "simultaneous" and "parallel" to refer to the instantaneous execution of all actions within a rule. We use the word "concurrent" to refer to the execution of multiple rules within a clock. Even though multiple rules may execute in a single clock period, in BSV semantics they will still have a logical sequential order.

We have also used the word "action" informally so far to refer to the actions in a rule. In fact, BSV has a type Action (and a more general type called ActionValue); the body of a rule has Action type, and many methods have Action and ActionValue type. Being formal types in BSV, one can even write expressions and functions of type Action and ActionValue.

# 7.2 Parallelism: semantics of a rule in isolation

A rule can be executed only if its rule condition is true. By this we mean the net, overall condition of the rule, combining any explicit user-supplied predicate and all the method conditions of the methods invoked in the rule, nuanced by any predicates of conditionals (if, case, ...) surrounding those method invocations. Assuming this condition is true, when we execute the rule, all the Actions in the rule (which are all typically method invocations) are performed simultaneously, in the same instant. We will provide more insight into this in the following sections.

#### 7.2.1 What actions can be combined (simultaneous) in a rule?

A rule consists of a set of actions. In fact, every action is actually an invocation of an Action method in the interface of some sub-module. For methods like enq and deq for FIFOs, the method invocation is obvious in the BSV syntax, but even ordinary register writes are in fact Action method invocations. The syntax:

```
Special syntax for register reads and writes _____
rule ...
r <= s + 1;
...
endrule
```

is in fact just a special syntax for method invocations:

```
Register access is just method invocation

rule ...

r._write (s._read + 1);

endrule
```

BSV's standard register interface is declared as follows:

```
Register interface -

interface Reg #(type t);

method Action _write (t data);

method t __read;

endinterface
```

All primitive BSV modules come with a specification of whether or not two invocations of its methods (which could be the same method) can be placed in the same rule or not, and what this means. These specifications are just "given" (or axiomatic), and from the point of view of BSV semantics that's all that matters, although in practice these "given" properties are of course inspired by hardware realization.

For example, the primitive register modules specify that a single rule cannot contain two \_writes on the same register within a rule. This makes intuitive hardware sense: if two \_writes on a register occur at the same instant, which value should it now hold? In general, the primitive register modules specify that a single rule can contain zero or more

1 2

3 4

5

\_reads and/or a single \_write on any particular register. It specifies the meaning of each \_read as returning the value that was in the register just before the rule execution instant, and the meaning of a \_write Action as leaving its argument value in the register just after the rule execution instant.

Similarly, FIFO modules will specify that you cannot have two engs on the same FIFO in the same rule (if they are simultaneous, in what order are they enqueued?).

Although these constraints and meanings are "given", or axiomatic, for primitive modules, they logically imply similar constraints on user-defined modules (which, ultimately, must be built with primitive modules either directly or indirectly). For example if a module has two methods m1 and m2 which both write into a common register, the constraints and meaning of the underlying \_writes carry upward to m1 and m2.

Constraints on methods of primitive or user-defined modules may also arise due to hardware resource limitations. For example, a method m3(x), when implemented in hardware, may have a single input bus for x; this bus can only be driven with one value at a time; thus, it would not make sense to have two invocations of m3 within a single rule.

In summary: we can place any actions into a rule for simultaneous execution, provided we respect such (mostly obvious) constraints. The bsc compiler will flag any violations as a static, compile-time error.

#### Examples of legal and illegal combinations of actions into rules

#### Example 1:

```
- Parallel methods in a rule
```

```
1
\mathbf{2}
3
```

rule ra if (z>10); x <= x+1; endrule

This rule is fine: a read and a write on register x is ok, as is a read from register z.

#### Example 2:

```
Parallel methods in a rule
       rule rb;
1
          x <= x+1;
2
          if (p) x <= 7;
3
       endrule
4
```

This rule is not ok, since it potentially performs two writes on regster x. bsc will accept it only in the trivial case where it can statically prove that **p** is false.

#### Example 3:

```
Parallel methods in a rule _______

rule rb;

if (q)

x <= x+1;

else

x <= 7;

endrule
```

This rule is ok. Even though there are two syntatic occurrences of a write to  $\mathbf{x}$ , they are in the context of a conditional which ensures that only one of them will be performed. It is equivalent to a more explicit muxed expression:

	Parallel methods in a rule
1	rule rb;
2	$x \le (q ? x+1 : 7);$
3	endrule

#### Example 4:

		Parallel methods in a rule
1	<pre>rule rc;</pre>	
2	x <= y+1;	
3	y <= x+2;	
4	endrule	

This rule is ok, since it contains one read and one write for each of x and y. According to the given (axiomatic) semantics of the **\_read** and **\_write** methods, both reads of x and y read the value just before the rule execution instant, and both writes of x and y will update the registers with values visible just after the execution instant. Thus, this rule does a kind of "exchange and increment" of x and y, incrementing by 2 and 1, respectively.

#### Example 5:

```
Parallel methods in a rule ______

rule rd;

let t1 = f (t2);

let t2 = g (t1);

x <= t1;

endrule
```

This rule will not be ok because it likely represents a combinational cycle (note that the output of each function is fed into the input of the other). *bsc* checks for combinational cycles and raises a compile time error if found.

#### Example 6:

```
Parallel methods in a rule ______

rule re;

2 s2 = f (s1);

3 s3 = g (s2);

4 x <= s3;

5 endrule
```

This rule will be ok if it is ok to call f and g simultaneously. For example, if f and g are ordinary arithmetic functions, there is no problem. Even if f and g are the same arithmetic function, the logic will simply be replicated. However, suppose f and g contain calls to a method on some hardware module (such as reading a single port in a register file but with different indexes); then that method will have a constraint that it cannot be called simultaneously, and the rule will not be ok. This constraint is likely driven by the hardware constraint that s1 and s2 are input wires into the module, and can only carry one value in any particular instant.

#### 7.2.2 Execution semantics of a single rule

A rule can be seen as a specification of an acyclic combinational circuit whose inputs and outputs are connected to the interface methods of sub-modules invoked in the rule. Please refer to Figs. 3.7 and 3.8 to refresh your memory about how interface methods map to input and output wires of a module. Also recall that for any Action or ActionValue method, there is an input "enable" wire ("EN"); when this wire is asserted the method's action is performed inside the module. For example, consider this rule:

```
1
2
3
4
```

```
Simple example for 1-rule semantics
rule rf (mod1.f > 3);
    x <= x+1;
    if (x != 0) y <= x >> 7;
endrule
```

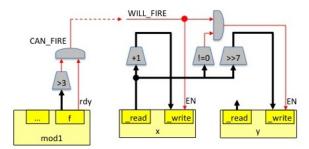


Figure 7.1: Combinational circuit for a rule

Fig. 7.1 illustrates the combinational circuit, or the "data flow graph" for this rule. The method mod1.f can only be invoked when it is enabled (its RDY signal is true). This is handled by the AND gate on the left. The CAN\_FIRE signal is a boolean indicating whether

the rule's condition is true. Let us for the moment also call this the WILL\_FIRE signal (later, in Sec. 7.5, we will see that the dashed line in the figure actually is a "scheduler" circuit, having to do with the relationship of this rule to other rules). The WILL\_FIRE signal activates the EN input of register x directly. However, since the update of y is inside a conditional, you can see that the WILL\_FIRE is further ANDed with the predicate of the conditional.

In general, the data flow graph of a rule may weave in and out of module methods, for example if an invoked method is itself a combinational function, or an invoked method is an ActionValue method. Further, for a user-defined sub-module, its methods will, in turn, invoke methods of deeper sub-modules. The data flow graph of a rule is the entire data flow graph, crossing use-defined module boundaries, eventually originating and terminating at methods of primitive modules.

The data flow graph is implemented by hardware combinational circuits and of course signals take time to propagate through such circuits. However, in BSV semantics we abstract away from this detail: we assume the values are instantly known on all the edges of the data flow graph, and that all the EN signals are simultaneously enabled.

Let us look at one more example to consolidate our understanding of individual rule semantics:

```
Another example for 1-rule semantics

rule rg;

let x = fifo1.first;

fifo1.deq;

for (Integer j = 1; j <= 4; j = j + 1)

x = x + j;

fifo2.enq (x);

rendrule
```

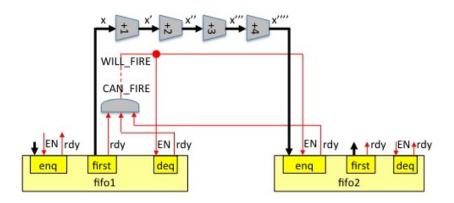


Figure 7.2: Combinational circuit for a rule: another example

Fig. 7.2 shows the data flow graph for this rule. The CAN\_FIRE and WILL\_FIRE signals are just the AND of the RDY signals for the three methods invoked in the rule. The for-loop has been statically elaborated into a chain of four adders, incrementing by 1, 2, 3 and 4 respectively. The input to the chain comes from fifol.first and the output goes into fifo2.enq. The enq and deq happen in one simultaneous, instantaneous action.

Another concept reinforced in Fig. 7.2 is that ordinary variables like x never refer to storage locations, as they do in C or C++. They are merely names for intermediate values (in the hardware, wires). A repeated "assignment" of x in a statically elaborated loop, as in line 5, does not update any storage, as in C or C++: it is just conceptually naming a new x for another set of wires. In the figure we have disambiguated them by calling them x', x'', x''', and x''''.

# 7.3 Logical semantics vs. implementation: sequential rule execution

We will see, in the next section, that even when a set of rules  $r_1, ..., r_n$  execute within a clock cycle ("concurrently"), we always explain the overall behavior in terms of a *logical* sequence of individual rules. This is just a programmer's view. In the actual hardware implementation generated by *bsc* there may be nothing recognizable as a sequence of rules, but the hardware will always behave equivalently to a sequential execution of rules.

The clean separation of abstract, logical semantics from what happens in any particular implementation is ubiquitous in Computer Science. For example, the semantic view of a processor instruction set (such as the MIPS or x86 instruction set) is one instruction at a time. The semantics of each opcode is described in terms of what it reads and writes in registers and memory, and the semantics of a program is explained as a sequence of instructions executed one at a time. Programmers writing assembly or machine code, and compilers generating such code, rely on this semantic model. A particular processor implementation may (and nowadays usually will) execute instructions in parallel (e.g., pipelining, and superscalar) or out-of-order, but the hardware will always behave equivalently to the sequential semantics. This separation allows clients (programmers and compilers) to create programs independently of implementors (processor designers); each can create new artifacts at their own developmental pace.

The BSV execution model is simple, almost trivial:

#### **BSV** execution semantics:

Forever:

- 1. Select a rule to execute
- 2. Execute the rule according to the previous section

This execution model of rules is a key strength of BSV compared to other hardware description languages like Verilog and VHDL. It is a simple model, and makes it easy to reason about correctness of programs.

## 7.4 Concurrent rule execution, and scheduling rules into clocks

As illustrated in Fig. 7.3, concurrent execution of rules in clocks is, semantically, just a grouping of the logical sequence of rule executions into clock periods. Note that the grouping may not be (indeed is not likely to be) uniform: some clocks may contain just 1 rule, other clocks may contain dozens or hundreds of rules (in fact this number may vary dynamically).

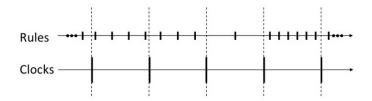


Figure 7.3: Clocks are just a grouping of logically sequential rule executions

Thus, we see that there is no change in the functional semantics, i.e., reasoning about how the system state changes as a result of execution of rules. But, once we map rules into clocks as suggested in the figure, we can now also reason about performance, i.e., *how long does it take* for the rules to compute something.

For maximum performance, we may wish to execute as many rules as possible concurrently (within each clock cycle). However, hardware properties will always limit what we can reasonably do within a clock cycle. In BSV, we abstract out those hardware-specific constraints into a simple semantic model of *scheduling constraints on pairs of methods*. Just as we saw, in Sec. 7.2, that methods have constraints about placement into a single rule, we also have constraints on methods in different rules within a clock.

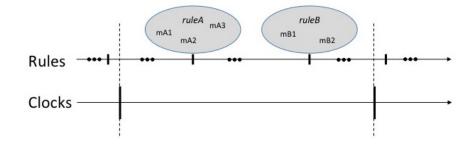


Figure 7.4: Two rules in a clock, and their methods

Fig. 7.4 shows two rules *ruleA* and *ruleB* in the same clock, in a particular order. They contain method invocations mA1, mA2, mA3, mB1, and mB2. Of course, each rule can execute only if its guard condition is true. In addition, both rules can execute only if, for each pair of methods mAi and mBj, there is no constraint on those two methods being invoked in that order. These constraints typically are specified like this:

Conflict free the methods can be invoked by rules in the same clock, in either order mAi < mBj the methods can be invoked by rules in the same clock, in that order

Of course, if the constraint was mBj < mAi, these two rules will not both be allowed to fire in the same clock cycle (each can fire individually on various clocks, but they can never both fire in the same clock).

Where do these inter-rule constraints come frome? Once again, like the intra-rule constraints we saw earlier, they are "given" (or axiomatic) for methods of primitive modules and these, in turn, may imply certain constraints for user-defined modules. Although, from a semantic point of view, we just take the constaints on primitive modules as "given", they are of course, in practice, inspired by hardware implementation constraints.

Consider again the register interface. We have already seen the constraints for combining \_read and \_write methods within a rule. For concurrent execution, we have the constraint:

#### \_read < \_write</pre>

We can easily see the hardware intuitions behind this. Within a clock, the value we read from a register is the one from the previous clock edge, and any value we write will only be visible at the next clock edge. The above constraint allows BSV register \_reads and \_writes to map naturally onto ordinary hardware register reads and writes. If we had allowed a rule with a \_write to precede another rule with a \_read within the same clock, then value written in the first rule would have to be read in the second rule, all within a clock, and this does not map naturally and directly to ordinary hardware registers.

We also use the word "conflict" to describe the situation where the method constraints imply contradictory rule orderings, i.e., some method constraints require ruleA < ruleB and other method constraints require ruleB < ruleA. Whenever there is a conflict in a set of rules, whether given by primitives or induced like this, those rules cannot execute concurrently.

#### 7.4.1 Schedules, and compilation of schedules

A *schedule* for a clock cycle is any linear list of rules to be attempted in that clock cycle. It can contain a subset or superset of the rules in a design, including duplicates. Executing a schedule is simple:

Forever (for each clock):

2.

- 1. For each rule in the schedule (in order):
  - If it is enabled

and it has no intra-rule conflicts and it has no inter-rule conflicts with rules already executed in this clock Perform the actions of the rule body

Different schedules can result in different performance. If two rules  $R_i$  and  $R_j$  are placed in a schedule such that a method ordering constraint is violated, then they can never fire in the same clock. Reversing their order in the schedule may allow them to fire in the same clock. The logical semantics leaves it open to the implementation to choose good schedules.

The *bsc* compiler performs extensive static analysis of the intra-rule and inter-rule constraints of a BSV program to create a good schedule, one that maximizes the number of rules that can execute within each clock. The user can place "attributes" in the source code to fix certain choices in schedule. Compilation outputs allow the user to view the schedule chosen, both graphically and textually. *bsc* generates hardware that implements the rules with this schedule.

#### 7.4.2 Examples

Let us now firm up this simple idea by looking at a series of examples.

#### Example 1

```
Conflict free example _____

rule ra if (z>10);

x <= x+1;

endrule

rule rb if (z>20);

y <= y+2;

r endrule
```

The methods involved are: z.\_read, x.\_read, x.\_write, y.\_read, and y.\_write. There are no constraints between x's methods and y's methods and z's methods. There are no constraints between z.\_read in different rules. Thus, there are no constraints between the rules, and *bsc* will compile hardware that permits these rules to fire concurrently (of course, only whenever both their rule conditions are true).

#### Example 2

```
Conflict example _____

rule ra if (z>10);

x <= y+1;

endrule

rule rb if (z>20);

y <= x+2;

r endrule
```

Here, y.\_read < y.\_write requires ra to precede rb. But, x.\_read < x.\_write requires rb to precede ra. This is a conflict, and *bsc* will ensure that these rules do not fire concurrently.

#### Example 3

```
Conflict-free example ______

rule ra if (z>10);

x <= y+1;

endrule

rule rb if (z>20);

y <= y+2;

r endrule
```

Here,  $y.\_read < y.\_write$  requires ra to precede rb, and that is the only inter-rule constraint. *bsc* will allow these rules to fire concurrently, in the logical order: ra before rb.

#### Example 4

```
Conflict example
        rule ra;
1
           x <= y+1;
2
           u <= u+2;
3
        endrule
4
\mathbf{5}
        rule rb;
6
7
           y <= y+2;
           v <= u+1;
8
        endrule
9
```

Here, y.\_read < y.\_write requires ra to precede rb. u.\_read < u.\_write requires rb to precede ra. Once again, we have a conflict, and *bsc* will not allow these rules to fire concurrently.

#### Example 5

i	Conflict-free example
1	rule ra (z>10);
2	x <= x+1;
3	endrule
4	
5	<pre>rule rb if (z&gt;20);</pre>
6	x <= 23;
7	endrule

Here,  $x.\_read < x.\_write$  requires ra to precede rb. The primitive register modules actually place no inter-rule scheduling constraint between  $x.\_write$  and  $x.\_write$  because:

- between rules there is always a clear logical sequential order;
- semantically, the final value in the register is what was written by the last rule in this order, and
- since the order is known statically to *bsc*, it is trivial to generate hardware to only perform the write from the last rule.

Thus, there is no conflict in this example, and bsc will allow the rules to execute concurrently with the logical ordering of **ra** before **rb**. Note that since the rules have different firing conditions, it is possible for rule **ra** to fire alone, incrementing **x**; it is only when they fire together that the increment is discarded and **x** is set to 23.

This example is sometimes surprising to hardware designers because it might appear as if we were doing two writes to the same register in the same clock. But this is confusing logical semantics with implementation. Here, the logical semantics is indeed doing two writes to the register; the implementation does just one. This happens all the time, not just in BSV! For example, if you wrote a C program with the statements:

C program optimization \_\_\_\_ x = f(a,b,c);1 x = 23;

2

The logical semantics of C implies there are two assignments to x, whereas most C compilers will happily "optimize" the program by discarding the first assignment to x (it may still call **f** in case it has side-effects that must be performed).

#### 7.4.3Nuances due to conditionals

Consider the following rules:

```
Conflict-freeness due to conditionals
1
       rule ra;
          if (p) fifo.eng (8);
2
          u <= u+2;
3
       endrule
4
5
       rule rb;
6
          if (! p) fifo.enq (9);
7
          y <= y+23;
8
       endrule
9
```

The enq method on most FIFOs will have a concurrency constraint that it conflicts with itself, arising out of the hardware implementation constraint that we can only handle one enqueue per clock cycle. In the above code, the p and !p conditions ensure that, even if the rules fire concurrently, only one **eng** will happen. bsc takes this into account when analyzing rules for conflicts, and will in fact deem these rules to be conflict free.

However, there is a caveat: the above conclusion depends on realizing (proving) that the conditions p and !p are mutually exclusive. When those expressions get more complicated, it may not be possible for *bsc* to prove mutual exclusivity. In such cases, *bsc* is conservative and will declare a conflict due to a potential concurrent invocation of the method.

#### 7.5Hardware intuition for concurrent scheduling

Fig. 7.5 sketches the compilation of a single rule in isolation into hardware. The left side of the figure represents all the current state of the system. The values of the current state are fed into the  $\pi$  and  $\delta$  boxes. The former is a combinational circuit computing the rule condition; the latter is a combinational circuit computing the next-state values of the state elements that are updated by the rule. Conceptually, the  $\delta$  outputs feed the D inputs of D flip-flops, and the  $\pi$  output feeds the EN (enable) input of the D flip-flops.

When we have multiple rules, each state element may be updated in multiple rules. Fig. 7.6 shows a first attempt at handling this, using a classical AND-OR muxes and an OR gate. However, what if multiple rules fire, as in Example 5 above?

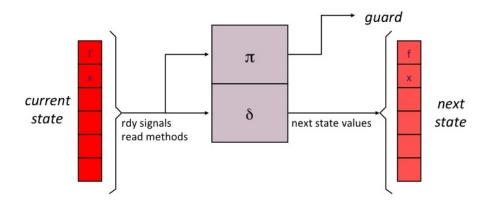


Figure 7.5: Compiling a single rule

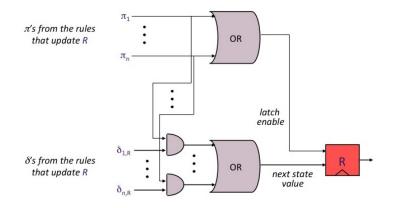


Figure 7.6: Combining updates from multiple rules

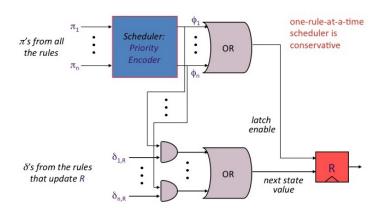


Figure 7.7: Scheduler for updating a state element

Fig. 7.7 shows how we first feed the  $\pi$ s through a *scheduler*, which is also a combinational circuit which, in turn, suppresses some of the  $\pi$ s. Specifically, based on the concurrency conflict analysis we've discussed above, it breaks conflicts by suppressing certain rules so that just the right amount of concurrency is allowed. An extreme version of a scheduler circuit would be a single-stepper, i.e., allowing only one enabled  $\pi$  to go through.

It is a very deep topic to consider good scheduling circuits. *bsc* has a sophisticated generation of the scheduler circuit that works well in practice.

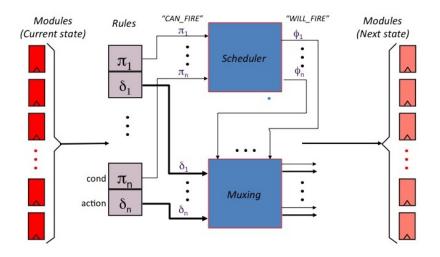


Figure 7.8: Scheduler for rules

Fig. 7.8 shows a generic schematic overview of the circuits produced by *bsc* for a BSV program, and also introduces some terminology commonly used in discussing these circuits. A rule's net condition, combining any explicit user-supplied predicate, and all the method conditions of the methods invoked in the rule, nuanced by any predicates of conditionals (if, case, ...) surrounding those method invocations, is called the CAN\_FIRE signal of the rule. I.e., if there were no other rules in the system, this would be the rule's firing condition.

The corresponding output of the scheduler circuit is called its WILL\_FIRE condition. Of course, if CAN\_FIRE is false, then WILL\_FIRE must be false. However, if CAN\_FIRE is true, then WILL\_FIRE may be false if rule scheduling has determined that a conflict requires this rule to be suppressed when certain other rules WILL\_FIRE.

# 7.6 Designing performance-critical ciruits using EHRs

Suppose we want to construct a module that is a two-port, 4-bit signed integer, saturating up-down counter, with the following interface:

```
Up-down saturating counter interface ________
interface UpDownSatCounter;
method ActionValue #(Int #(4)) incr1 (Int #(4) delta);
method ActionValue #(Int #(4)) incr2 (Int #(4) delta);
endinterface
```

Let's assume that a module with this interface has some internal state holding the Int#(4) counter value (-8..7), initially 0. When either incr method is called, the internal value should change by delta (which may be negative), and the the previous value is returned. The counter is "saturating", i.e., any attempt to increment it beyond 7 leaves the value at 7. Similarly, any attempt to decrement it below -8 leaves the value at -8.

Here is a module implementing this:

```
Up-down saturating counter module -
    module mkUpDownCounter (UpDownSatCounter);
1
\mathbf{2}
       Int #(4) ctr <- mkReg (0);</pre>
3
4
       function ActionValue #(Int #(4)) fn_incr (Int #(4) delta);
5
           actionvalue
6
              if (delta > (15 - ctr)) ctr <= 15;
7
              else if (delta < (-8 - ctr)) ctr <= -8;
8
              else ctr <= ctr + delta;</pre>
9
                              // note: returns old value
              return ctr;
10
           endactionvalue
11
       endfunction
12
13
       method ActionValue #(Int #(4)) incr1 (Int#(4) delta) = fn_incr (delta);
14
15
       method ActionValue #(Int #(4)) incr2 (Int#(4) delta) = fn_incr (delta);
16
    endmodule
17
```

We define an internal function fn\_incr that performs the desired saturating increment and returning the old value, and then we define the two methods to just invoke this function. In the function, note that even though the register updates are textually before the return ctr statement, we return the old value because an Action or ActionValue in BSV is semantically an instantaneous event, and all "reads" return the previous value.

#### 7.6.1 Intra-clock concurrency and semantics

The module above may be functionally correct, but in hardware design we are usually interested in more than that— performance, in particular. The performance of a system that uses this up-down counter may boil down to this question: can incr1 and incr2 be operated in the same clock cycle, i.e., concurrently?

If you compile the code as written with *bsc* you will discover that the two methods cannot be operated in the same clock cycle. This follows from our discussion of conflicts in Sec. 7.4. Both methods, in turn, invoke methods ctr.\_read and ctr.\_write; the method constraints require that incr1 precedes incr2 and vice versa, a classic case of a conflict, thereby preventing concurrent execution.

Before we try solving this, we must first examine a crucial semantic issue: what does it mean for these methods to be operated in the same cycle? Suppose the previous counter value was 3 and we invoked incr1(5) and incr2(-6). Should we consider the counter to

saturate at 7 because of +5, and then decrement to 1 due to -6? Or should we consider it to decrement to -3 due to -6 and then increment to 2 due to +5? And, what should be returned as the "previous value" in each method? We are not here recommending one semantics over another (there is no "right" answer); but we must pick one, i.e, define a precise desired semantics.

This is where our logical sequential semantics of rules gives us the tools to be precise. We simply specify a desired logical order:

 $\begin{array}{ll} & \texttt{incr1} < \texttt{incr2} & (A) \\ \text{or} & \texttt{incr2} < \texttt{incr1} & (B) \end{array}$ 

With either choice, we can now give a precise answer to the question previously posed. For example, suppose we chose (A). Then,

Previous value is 3; Logically, incr1(5) saturates it at 7, and the value returned is 3; Logically, incr2(-6) leaves the counter at 1, and the value returned is 1.

#### 7.6.2 EHRs

As we saw in the previous section, using ordinary registers in the implementation does not permit the desired concurrency. For this, we use a somewhat richer primitive called an EHR (for Ephemeral History Register) which will have n logically sequenced pairs of ports for reads and writes. In fact, the conventional ordinary register is just a special case of an EHR with one read and one write port.

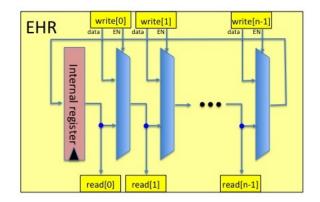


Figure 7.9: An EHR implementation

An EHR is conceptually a register with an array of n read and write ports, indexed by  $0 \le j \le n-1$ , and which can all be read and written concurrently (in the same clock). Fig. 7.9 illustrates a possible EHR implementation. Suppose we perform a read from port j, and suppose zero or more writes were performed on ports < j. Then the value returned on read port j is the "most recent" write, i.e., corresponding to the highest port < j amongst the writes. If there are no writes into any ports < j, the value returned is the value originally in the register. Finally, the register is updated with the value written at the highest port

number, if any; if there are no writes, the original value is preserved. Thus, increasing port numbers correspond to an intra-clock, concurrent, logical sequence. The concurrency scheduling constraints on an EHR's ports are shown below:

ports[0].\_read < ports[0].\_write
< ports[1].\_read < ports[1].\_write
...
< ports[n-1].\_read < ports[n-1].\_write</pre>

#### 7.6.3 Implementing the counter with EHRs

Using EHRs, it is easy to see how to implement our up-down saturating counter.

```
_ Up-down saturating counter with EHRs _
    module mkUpDownCounter (UpDownSatCounter);
1
2
                                                  // 2 ports
       EHR #(2, Int #(4)) ctr <- mkEHR (0);
3
4
       function ActionValue #(Int #(4)) fn_incr (Integer port, Int #(4) delta);
5
          actionvalue
6
             if (delta > (15 - ctr.ports[port])) ctr.ports[port] <= 15;</pre>
7
              else if (delta < (-8 - ctr.ports[port])) ctr.ports[port] <= -8;</pre>
8
              else ctr.ports[port] <= ctr.ports[port] + delta;</pre>
9
              return ctr.ports[port];
10
          endactionvalue
11
       endfunction
12
13
       method ActionValue #(Int#(4)) incr1 (Int#(4) delta) = fn_incr(0,delta);
14
15
       method ActionValue #(Int#(4)) incr2 (Int#(4) delta) = fn_incr(1,delta);
16
    endmodule
17
```

In line 3, we instantiate an EHR with two ports holding an Int#(4) value. The function fn\_incr is parametrized by by a port number. The method incr1 uses port 0, while the method incr2 uses port 1. This implements semantic choice (A), i.e., incr1<incr2. If we exchanged the 0 and 1 indexes, we'd implement choice (B), i.e., incr2<incr1.

#### Exercise

Add a third method which just sets the counter to a known value n:

	Additional set method
method Action set (UInt	#(4) n);

First, define a semantics for this, i.e., provide a specification of what should happen when this method is called in the same clock as either or both of the other two methods (there is no "right" answer to this: you should choose a semantics). Then, extend the module implementation so that it implements this new method with these semantics.

# 7.7 Concurrent FIFOs

In Sec. 4.3 we introduced elastic pipelines where the stages are separated by FIFOs. For true pipeline behavior, all the individual rules (one for each stage) must be capable of firing concurrently, so that the whole pipeline moves together. More specifically, the **enq** method in an upstream rule must fire concurrently with the **first** and **deq** methods in a downstream rule. In this section we will introduce various FIFOs with this behavior, but with different semantics. Most of the FIFOs we present will have the following standard interface from the BSV library, which is obtained by importing the FIFOF package:

```
_ FIFOF interface
```

```
interface FIFOF #(type t);
1
       method Bool notEmpty;
2
       method Bool notFull;
3
4
       method Action enq (t x);
\mathbf{5}
6
       method t
                        first;
7
       method Action deq;
8
9
       method Action clear;
10
    endinterface
11
```

The notEmpty and notFull methods are always enabled, and can be used to test for emptiness and fullness. The enq method will only be enabled in the notFull state. The first and deq methods will only be enabled in the notEmpty state. The clear method is always enabled, and can be used to set the FIFO to the empty state.

### 7.7.1 Multi-element concurrent FIFOs

It is subtle, but not hard to create a concurrent multi-element FIFO using ordinary registers. Here is a first attempt at creating a two element FIFO (note that arithmetic on Bit#(n) types is unsigned, and will wrap around):

```
Two element FIFO, first attempt _
    module mkFIF0F2 (FIF0F #(t));
1
       Reg #(t)
                                      <- mkRegU;
                                                       // data storage
                           rg_0
2
       Reg #(t)
                                      <- mkRegU;
                                                       // data storage
                           rg_1
3
       Reg #(Bit #(1))
                                      <- mkReg (0);
                                                       // index of tail (0 or 1)
                           rg_tl
4
                           rg_count <- mkReg (0);</pre>
       Reg #(Bit #(2))
                                                       // # of items in FIFO
\mathbf{5}
6
       Bit #(2) hd = extend (rg_tl) - rg_count;
                                                       // index of head
7
8
       method Bool notEmpty = (rg_count > 0);
9
       method Bool notFull = (rg_count < 2);</pre>
10
11
       method Action enq (t x) if (rg_count < 2);</pre>
12
           if (rg_tl == 0)
13
```

```
rg_0 <= x;
14
           else
15
16
               rg_1 <= x;
           rg_count <= rg_count + 1;</pre>
17
        endmethod
18
19
        method t first () if (rg_count > 0);
20
           return ((hd[0] == 0) ? rg_0 : rg_1);
21
        endmethod
22
23
        method Action deq () if (rg_count > 0);
^{24}
           rg_count <= rg_count - 1;</pre>
25
        endmethod
26
27
        method Action clear;
28
           rg_count <= 0;</pre>
29
        endmethod
30
    endmodule
31
```

Although functionally ok, enq and deq cannot run concurrently because they both read and write the rg\_count register, and so any concurrent execution would violate a "\_read < \_write" constraint. We can modify the code to avoid this, as follows:

```
Concurrent two element FIFO -
    module mkFIFOF2 (FIFOF #(t));
1
       Reg #(t)
                           rg_0 <- mkRegU;</pre>
                                                    // data storage
2
       Reg #(t)
                           rg_1 <- mkRegU;</pre>
                                                    // data storage
3
       Reg #(Bit #(2))
                           rg_hd <- mkReg (0); // index of head</pre>
4
       Reg #(Bit #(2))
                           rg_tl <- mkReg (0); // index of tail</pre>
5
6
       Bit #(2) count = ( (rg_hd <= rh_tl)
7
                           ? (rg_tl - rg_hd)
                           : (rg_tl + 2 - rg_hd));
9
10
       method Bool notEmpty = (count > 0);
11
       method Bool notFull = (count < 2);</pre>
12
13
       method Action enq (t x) if (count < 2);</pre>
14
           if (rg_t1[0] == 0)
15
              rg_0 <= x;
16
           else
17
18
              rg_1 <= x;
           rg_tl <= rg_tl + 1;
19
       endmethod
20
21
       method t first () if (count > 0);
22
           return ((rg_hd[0] == 0) ? rg_0 : rg_1);
^{23}
       endmethod
24
```

```
25
        method Action deq () if (count > 0);
26
           rg_hd \leq rg_hd + 1;
27
        endmethod
28
29
        method Action clear;
30
           rg_hd <= 0;
31
           rg_tl <= 0;
32
        endmethod
33
    endmodule
34
```

In this version of the code, enq and deq both read the rg\_hd and rg\_tl registers. The former only writes rg\_tl, and the latter only writes rg\_hd. Thus, the methods can run concurrently. Note that first reads rg\_0 and rg\_1, while enq writes them; therefore, because of the "\_read < \_write" constraint, first must precede enq in any concurrent schedule.

#### Larger FIFOs

In the two-element FIFOs just shown, we explicitly instantiated two registers to hold the FIFO data. This would get quite tedious for larger FIFOs, where n > 2. We could, instead, use BSV's Vector library, like this:

```
\_ Concurrent n	ext{-element} FIFO \_
    import Vector :: *;
1
2
    module mkFIFOF_n #(numeric type n)
3
                        (FIFOF #(t));
4
        Vector #(n, Reg #(t)) vrg <- replicateM (mkRegU);</pre>
5
6
        . . .
        method t first () if (count > 0);
7
           return vrg [rg_hd];
8
        endmethod
9
10
        . . .
    endmodule
11
```

The BSV library provides the mkSizedFIFOF family of modules to create such FIFOs. When n is very large, even such implementations would not be efficient, since it requires large muxes to select a particular value from the vector. The BSV library provides various memory-based FIFO modules for very large FIFOs, in the BRAMFIFO package.

#### 7.7.2 Semantics of single element concurrent FIFOs

If we attempt to define a single element concurrent FIFO using ordinary registers, we will face a problem. Here is a first attempt (a specialization of the two element FIFO):

```
One element FIFO, first attempt _
    module mkFIFOF1 (FIFOF #(t));
1
                                     <- mkRegU;
        Reg #(t)
                                                      // data storage
2
                           rg
        Reg #(Bit #(1)) rg_count <- mkReg (0); // # of items in FIFO (0 or 1)
3
4
        method Bool notEmpty = (rg_count == 1);
\mathbf{5}
        method Bool notFull = (rg_count == 0);
6
7
        method Action enq (t x) if (rg_count == 0);
8
           rg <= x;
9
           rg_count <= 1;</pre>
10
        endmethod
11
12
        method t first () if (rg_count == 1);
13
           return rg;
14
        endmethod
15
16
       method Action deq () if (rg_count == 1);
17
           rg_count <= 0;</pre>
18
        endmethod
19
20
        method Action clear;
21
           rg_count <= 0;</pre>
22
        endmethod
23
    endmodule
24
```

The problem is that, since a one element FIFO is either empty or full (equivalently, either notFull or notEmpty), either enq or deq will be enabled, but not both. Thus, we could never concurrently enq and deq into this FIFO.

Before looking at implementations, let us first step back and clarify what we mean by concurrency on a one element FIFO, i.e., define the semantics. There are two obvious choices:

• In a *Pipeline FIFO*, we can **enq** and **deq** concurrenty even when it already contains an element, with the following logical ordering:

```
first < enq
deq < enq
```

This ordering makes it clear that the element returned by first is the element already in the FIFO; that deq logically empties the FIFO; and that enq then inserts a new element into the FIFO. When the FIFO is empty, first and deq are not enabled, and there is no concurrency.

• In a *Bypass FIFO*, we can **enq** and **deq** concurrently even when it contains no elements, with the following logical ordering:

 ${\tt enq} < {\tt first}$  ${\tt enq} < {\tt deq}$  This ordering makes it clear that enq inserts a new element into the empty FIFO, and this is the element returned by first and emptied by deq. Thus, the enqueued element can "fly through" the FIFO within the same clock, which is why it is called a Bypass FIFO. When the FIFO is full, enq is not enabled, and there is no concurrency.

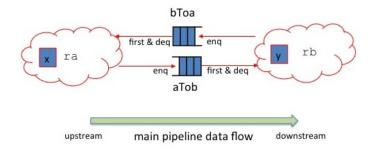


Figure 7.10: Typical Pipeline and Bypass FIFO usage

As we shall see in subsequent chapters, both kinds of FIFOs are used heavily in processor design. Typically, Pipeline FIFOs are used in the forward direction of a pipeline, and Bypass FIFOs are used for feedback paths that go upstream against the pipeline data flow. Fig. 7.10 illustrates a typical structure. For concurrent operation we typically want rule rb to be earlier in the schedule than rule ra because when the forward FIFO aTob has data we want, conceptually to dequeue it first from rb and then concurrently refill it from ra. Thus, for a consistent schedule, you can see that:

aTob.first and aTob.deq	<	aTob.enq
bToa.enq	<	bToa.first and bToa.deq

and thus aTob is a Pipeline FIFO and bToa is a Bypass FIFO. There are other possibilities, namely that one or both of the FIFOs is a "conflict-free" FIFO with no ordering constraint on first/deq and enq.

A nuance: although single element FIFOs make the concurrency question stark, the same issues can arise even in larger element FIFOs (n > 1). In those FIFOs this issue is often masked because the FIFO has additional states where it is neither empty nor full, and in those states, concurrency is easy. But even in those FIFOs, we may want to enrich to corner cases to have Pipeline FIFO behavior when it is actually full, or Bypass FIFO behavior when it is actually empty.

#### 7.7.3 Implementing single element concurrent FIFOs using EHRs

With EHRs, it is easy to implement single element Pipeline and Bypass FIFOs. Here is an implementation of a Pipeline FIFO:

	Pipeline FIFO with EHRs									
1	module	mkPipelineFIFOF	(FIFOF #(t));							
2	EHR	#(3, t)	ehr	<- mkEHRU;	// data storage					
3	EHR	#(3, Reg #(Bit #	(1))) ehr_count	<pre>- mkEHR (0);</pre>	<pre>// # of items in FIFO</pre>					

```
4
        method Bool notEmpty = (ehr_count.ports[0] == 1);
\mathbf{5}
       method Bool notFull = (ehr_count.ports[1] == 0);
6
        method Action enq (t x) if (ehr_count.ports[1] == 0);
8
           ehr.ports[1] <= x;</pre>
9
           ehr_count.ports[1] <= 1;</pre>
10
        endmethod
11
12
       method t first () if (ehr_count.ports[0] == 1);
13
           return ehr.ports[0];
14
        endmethod
15
16
        method Action deq () if (ehr_count.ports[0] == 1);
17
           ehr_count.ports[0] <= 0;</pre>
18
        endmethod
19
20
       method Action clear;
21
           ehr_count.ports[2] <= 0;</pre>
22
        endmethod
23
    endmodule
24
```

We've generalized the data storage and item count from ordinary registers to EHRs. The notEmpty, first and deq methods use port 0 of the EHRs, and are thus earliest in the schedule. The notFull and enq methods use port 1 of the EHRs, and are thus next in the schedule. Finally, the clear method uses port 2, and is thus last in the schedule.

Similarly, here is a Bypass FIFO:

```
Bypass FIFO with EHRs
    module mkBypassFIFOF (FIFOF #(t));
1
       EHR #(3, t)
                                                               // data storage
                                               <- mkEHRU;
                                     ehr
2
       EHR #(3, Reg #(Bit #(1))) ehr_count <- mkEHR (0); // # of items in FIFO
3
4
       method Bool notEmpty = (ehr_count.ports[1] == 1);
5
       method Bool notFull = (ehr_count.ports[0] == 0);
6
7
       method Action enq (t x) if (ehr_count.ports[0] == 0);
8
           ehr.ports[0] <= x;</pre>
9
           ehr_count.ports[0] <= 1;</pre>
10
       endmethod
11
12
       method t first () if (ehr_count.ports[1] == 1);
13
          return ehr.ports[1];
14
       endmethod
15
16
       method Action deq () if (ehr_count.ports[1] == 1);
17
          ehr_count.ports[1] <= 0;</pre>
18
```

19	endmethod
20	
21	method Action clear;
22	<pre>ehr_count.ports[2] &lt;= 0;</pre>
23	endmethod
24	endmodule

Here we have just reversed the port assignments compared to the Pipeline FIFO: notFull and enq use port 0 and are thus earliest in the schedule; notEmpty, first and deq use port 1 and are next in the schedule; and clear, as before, used port 2 and is last in the schedule.

# Chapter 8

# Data Hazards (Read-after-Write Hazards)

# 8.1 Read-after-write (RAW) Hazards and Scoreboards

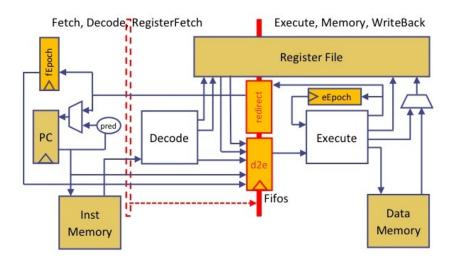


Figure 8.1: Alternate two-stage pipelining of SMIPS

Consider an alternative partitioning of our 2-stage pipeline from Chapter 6. Let us move the stage boundary from its current position, between the fetch and decode functions, to a new position, between the decode and execute functions, as illustrated in Fig. 8.1. The information carried from the Decode to the Execute stage has the following data type:

			Decode	to	Execute	e inf	ormatic	n	
1	typedef	struct {							
2	Addr	pc;							
3	Addr	ppc;							
4	Bool	epoch;							
5	Decod	ledInst dInst;							
6	Data	rVal1;			value	from	source	register	1
7	Data	rVal2;			value	from	source	register	2

} Decode2Execute 8 deriving (Bits, Eq);

q

The code for the processor looks like this:

```
Processor pipelined at Decode-to-Execute
    module mkProc(Proc);
1
        Reg#(Addr)
                            pc <- mkRegU;</pre>
2
        RFile
                            rf <- mkRFile;</pre>
3
        IMemory
                            iMem <- mkIMemory;</pre>
4
                            dMem <- mkDMemory;
        DMemory
\mathbf{5}
6
        FIFO #(Decode2Execute) d2e <- mkFIFO;</pre>
7
8
        Reg#(Bool)
                        fEpoch <- mkReg(False);</pre>
9
        Reg#(Bool)
                        eEpoch <- mkReg(False);</pre>
10
        FIFO#(Addr)
                        execRedirect <- mkFIF0;</pre>
11
12
        rule doFetch;
13
           let inst = iMem.req(pc);
14
           if (execRedirect.notEmpty) begin
15
               fEpoch <= ! fEpoch;</pre>
16
               pc <= execRedirect.first;</pre>
17
               execRedirect.deq;
18
           end
19
           else begin
20
               let ppc = nextAddrPredictor(pc);
21
              pc <= ppc;</pre>
22
               // ---- The next three lines used to be in the Execute rule
23
               let dInst = decode(inst);
24
               let rVal1 = rf.rd1 (validRegValue(dInst.src1));
25
               let rVal2 = rf.rd2 (validRegValue(dInst.src2));
26
               d2e.enq (Decode2Execute {pc: pc, ppc: ppc,
27
                                            dIinst: dInst, epoch: fEpoch,
28
                                            rVal1: rVal1, rVal2: rVal2});
29
           end
30
        endrule
31
32
        rule doExecute;
33
           let x = d2e.first;
34
           let dInst = x.dInst;
35
36
           let pc
                       = x.pc;
           let ppc
                       = x.ppc;
37
           let epoch = x.epoch;
38
           let rVal1 = x.rVal1;
39
           let rVal2 = x.rVal2;
40
           if (epoch == eEpoch) begin
41
               ... same as before ...
42
```

```
43
               ... rf.wr (validRegValue (eInst.dst), eInst.data);
44
              if (eInst.mispredict) begin
45
                  ... same as before ...
46
              end
47
           end
48
           d2e.deq
49
        endrule
50
    endmodule
51
```

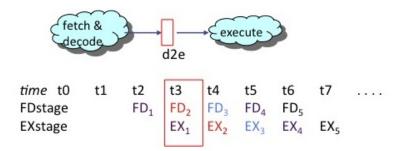


Figure 8.2: Classical pipeline schedule

This code is not quite correct, since it has a data hazard. The Fetch rule reads from the register file (rf.rd1 and rf.rd2), and the Execute rule writes to the register file (rf.wr). Unfortunately the Fetch rule may be reading stale values from the register file. Fig. 8.2 is a classical illustration of a pipeline schedule. At time t1, the Fetch-Decode stage is occupied by the first instruction, depicted by FD<sub>1</sub>. At time t2, this instruction now occupies the Execute stage, depicted by EX<sub>1</sub>, while the next instruction now occupies the Fetch-Decode stage, depicted by FD<sub>2</sub>, and so on. Suppose these two instructions were:

 $I_1 \qquad \text{Add (R1, R2, R3)} \\ I_2 \qquad \text{Add (R4, R1, R2)}$ 

When  $I_2$  reads register R1, it should get the value computed by  $I_1$ . But in the schedule above,  $FD_2$  and  $EX_1$  access the register file at the same time (at time t2) and so it is likely to get the old value in R1 instead of the newly computed value. This is called a Readafter-Write (or RAW) data hazard. What we need to do is to delay, or *stall*  $I_2$  until  $I_1$  has written its value into the register file. This is illustrated in Fig. 8.3.

time t0	t1	t2	t3	t4	t5	t6	t7	
FDstage		$FD_1$	FD <sub>2</sub>	FD <sub>2</sub>	FD <sub>3</sub>	$FD_4$	$FD_5$	
EXstage			$EX_1$		EX2	$EX_3$	$EX_4$	$EX_5$

Figure 8.3: Pipeline schedule with a stall

To deal with RAW hazards, we need to:

- Keep a pending list of registers which will be written by instructions that are still in the pipeline. When an instruction enters the Execute stage we enter its destination in this list; when the instruction completes, we remove this entry.
- Stall the Decode stage when it has an instruction with a RAW hazard, i.e., whose source registers are in the above pending list

In Computer Architecture literature, this pending list is called a *Scoreboard*. In BSV, we express its interface as follows:

The insert method adds a new destination register name into the scoreboard. The search1 method searches to see if src1 exists in the scoreboard. The search2 has the same functionality; we need two such methods because we need to test both source registers of an instruction in parallel. The remove method discards the oldest entry in the scoreboard (the one that was inserted first). Conceptually, the scoreboard is a FIFO, with insert corresponding to the enqueue operation and remove the dequeue operation.

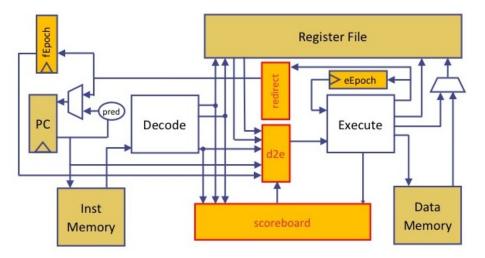


Figure 8.4: Pipeline with scoreboard

Fig. 8.4 illustrates the pipeline along with the scoreboard. We modify the code as follows.

```
Scoreboard interface -
module mkProc(Proc);
... same state elements as before ...
Scoreboard sb <- mkScoreboard (1);
```

```
rule doFetch;
7
           let inst = iMem.req(pc);
8
           if (execRedirect.notEmpty) begin
9
              ... seame as before ...
10
           end
11
           else begin
12
              let ppc = nextAddrPredictor (pc);
13
              let dInst = decode(inst);
14
              let stall = sb.search1 (dInst.src1) || sb.search2 (dInst.src2);
15
              if (! stall) begin
16
                 let rVal1 = rf.rd1 (validRegValue(dInst.src1));
17
                 let rVal2 = rf.rd2 (validRegValue(dInst.src2));
18
                 d2e.enq(Decode2Execute {pc: pc, ppc: ppc,
19
                                            dlinst: dlnst, epoch: fEpoch,
20
                                            rVal1: rVal1, rVal2: rVal2});
21
                 sb.insert(dInst.rDst);
22
                 pc <= ppc;</pre>
23
              end
^{24}
           end
25
       endrule
26
27
       rule doExecute;
28
           let x = d2e.first;
29
           ... same as before ...
30
           if (epoch == eEpoch) begin
31
              ... same execution as before ...
32
           end
33
           d2e.deq;
34
           sb.remove;
35
       endrule
36
    endmodule
37
```

In line 5 we instantiate a scoreboard with size 1 (holds one entry). This is because, in this pipeline, there is at most one pending instruction in the Execute stage. In line 15 we search the scoreboard for data hazards; we perform the register reads and forward the instruction in the following lines only if we do not stall. In line 22 we insert the destination register of the current instruction into the scoreboard. Note that line 23 updates the PC only if we do not stall; if we stall, this rule will be repeated at the same PC. In the Execute rule, the only difference is that, in line 35, we remove the completed instruction's destination register from the scoreboard.

We invoke search1, search2 and insert in a single rule (doFetch), i.e., at a single instant. Clearly, we expect the single-rule semantics of these methods to be such that the searches check the *existing* state of the scoreboard (due to previous instructions only), and insert creates the next state of the scoreboard. There is no concurrency issue here since they are invoked in the same rule.

8.2 Concurrency issues in the pipeline with register file and scoreboard

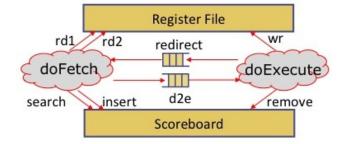


Figure 8.5: Abstraction of the pipeline for concurrency analysis

Fig.8.5 is an abstraction of the key elements of the pipeline so that we can analyze its concurrency.

In general, we think of the concurrent schedule of pipelines as going from right to left (from downstream to upstream). Please refer back to Fig. 4.6 which depicts an elastic pipeline with a number of stages. In full-throughput steady state, it is possible that every pipeline register (FIFO) is full, i.e., contains data. In this situation, the only rule that can fire is the right-most (most downstream) rule, because it is the only one that is not stalled by a full downstream FIFO. Once it fires, the pipeline register to its left is empty, and this permits the rule to its left to fire. Its firing, in turn, permits the rule to its left to fire, and so on. Of course, these are concurrent firings, i.e., they all fire in the same clock with the right-to-left logical order, thus advancing data through the entire pipeline on each clock.

This idea was also discussed around Fig. 7.10, where we saw that we typically deploy PipelineFIFOs in the forward direction (with first and deq < enq) and BypassFIFOs in the reverse direction (with enq < first and deq).

Referring now again to Fig.8.5, we expect a schedule with rule doExecute followed by rule doFetch, d2e is PipelineFIFO, and redirect is a BypassFIFO. Consistent with this schedule:

- We expect Scoreboard to have remove < insert. This is just like a PipelineFIFO, whose implementation we have already seen in Sec. 7.7.3.
- We expect Register File to have wr < rd1 and rd2. This read-after-write ordering is like a BypassFIFO, and is the opposite order of a conventional register (where \_read < \_write).

A register file with the given method ordering can easily be implemented useing EHRs (described in 7.6.2):

```
Register File with R-A-W ______

module mkBypassRFile(RFile);

Vector #(32, EHR #(2, Data)) rfile <- replicateM (mkEhr(0));
```

```
method Action wr(RIndx rindx, Data data);
4
           if (rindex!==0)
\mathbf{5}
              (rfile[rindex])[0] <= data;</pre>
6
        endmethod
7
8
       method Data rd1 (RIndx rindx) = (rfile[rindx])[1];
9
10
       method Data rd2 (RIndx rindx) = (rfile[rindx])[1];
11
    endmodule
12
```

# 8.3 Write-after-Write Hazards

What happens if a fetched instruction has no RAW hazards, but writes to the same register as an instruction that is still in the pipeline? This is called a Write-after-Write (WAW) hazard. Note, there can be no instruction ahead of it that reads that register, since any instruction would still be stalled in the Fetch stage.

There are two ways we could solve this problem:

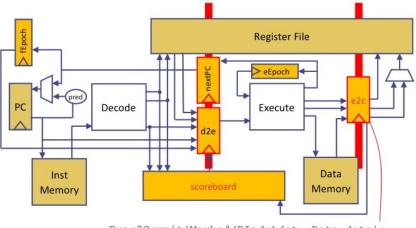
- 1. If we implement our scoreboard as a FIFO, there is no problem. The current instruction will be enqueued into the scoreboard, which may now contain two identical entries. Any later instruction that reads this register will be stalled until both corresponding writing instructions have completed and these entries have been removed.
- 2. We could implement the scoreboard as a simple bit vector with one bit per register in the register file. The insert method sets a bit, and the remove method resets it. In this case, since we can't keep track of multiple instructions writing to the same register, we must stall any instruction that has a WAW hazard. This will require another search3 method to test the destination register of an instruction in addition to its sources, in the Decode logic.

# 8.4 Deeper pipelines

Fig. 8.6 illustrates a version of our pipeline that is partitioned into 3 stages. The previous Execute stage has been refined into two parts, one that performs the ALU and memory operations and another, the "Commit" stage, that performs the writeback of the output value to the register file (if the instruction has an output). Since there can now be two instructions "in flight" ahead of the Decode stage, we need to increase the size of the scoreboard to hold two destination register names.

In the Execute stage, when we kill a wrong-path instruction, we can pass an "Invalid" destination to the Commit stage, like so:

```
Execute stage in 3-stage pipeline
rule doExecute;
... same as before ...
if (epoch == eEpoch) begin
```



Exec2Commit{Maybe#(RIndx)dst, Data data};

Figure 8.6: 3-stage pipeline

```
... same as before, but without rf.wr() ...
4
              e2c.enq (Exec2Commit {dst:eInst.dst, data:eInst.data});
\mathbf{5}
6
           else
7
              e2c.eng (Exec2Commit {dst:Invalid, data:?});
8
            d2e.deq;
9
       endrule
10
11
       rule doCommit;
12
          let dst = eInst.first.dst;
13
           let data = eInst.first.data;
14
           if (dst matches tagged Valid .rdst)
15
              rf.wr (rdst, data);
16
           e2c.deq;
17
                          // was in doExecute
           sb.remove;
18
       endrule
19
```

The new doCommit rule performs the writeback, if the destination is valid, and also removes the destination from the scoreboard.

Fig. 8.7 illustrates a version of our pipeline that is partitioned into 6 stages. The previous Fetch stage has been split into three stages: Fetch, Decode and RegRead (which performs the register reads). The previous Execute stage has been split into two stages: Execute ALU ops and initiate memory access, and Complete Memory Access.

### 8.5 Conclusion

The systematic application of pipelining requires a deep understanding of hazards, especially in the presence of concurrent operations. Performance issues are usually more subtle, compared to correctness issues.

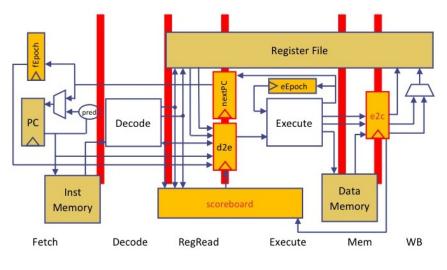


Figure 8.7: 6-stage pipeline

In the next chapter we turn our attention back to control hazards, and we will look at the implementation of more sophisticated branch predictors that improve as execution proceeds by learning from the past branching of the program.

# Chapter 9

# **Branch Prediction**

# 9.1 Introduction

In this chapter, we turn our attention back to control hazards and study some increasingly sophisticated schemes for branch prediction.

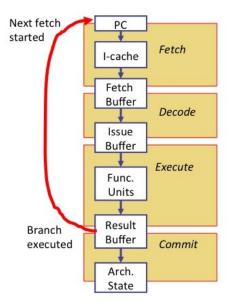


Figure 9.1: Loop penalty without branch prediction

How important is this issue? Modern processor pipelines are very deep; they may have ten or more stages. Consider the pipeline shown in Fig. 9.1. It is not until the end of the Execute stage, when a branch has been fully resolved, that we know definitively what the next PC should be. If the Fetch stage were always to wait until this moment to fetch the next instruction, we would effectively have no pipeline behavior at all. The time taken to execute a program loop containing N instructions would be  $N \times$  pipeline-depth.

Of course, such a penalty might be acceptable if it were very rare. For example, if we only paid this penalty on actual branch instructions, and branch instructions were few and

far between, then the penalty would be amortized over the high pipelining performance we would get on the other instructions.

Unfortunately this is not so in real programs. The SPEC benchmarks are a collection of programs intended to be representative of real application programs, and people have measured the statistics of instructions in these programs. The following table shows the dynamic instruction mix from SPEC, i.e., we run the programs and count each kind of instruction actually executed.

Instruction type	SPECint92	SPECfp92
ALU	39%	$13 \ \%$
FPU Add		20~%
FPU Mult		$13 \ \%$
load	26~%	23~%
store	9~%	9~%
branch	16~%	8 %
other	$10 \ \%$	12~%

SPECint92 programs:	compress, equtott, espresso, gcc , li
SPECfp92 programs:	doduc, ear, hydro2d, mdijdp2, su2cor

In particular, the average  $run \ length$  between branch instructions is hardly 6 to 12 instructions, i.e., branch instructions are quite frequent.

Our simple pipelined architecture so far performs very simple next-address predictions it always predicts PC+4. This means that it always predicts that branches are not taken. This is not bad, since most instructions are not control-transfer instructions (and has been measured on real codes to have about a 70% accuracy).

In this chapter we will study improvements to this simple prediction scheme. Our improvements will be dynamic, i.e., the prediction schemes "learn", or "self-tune" based on past program behavior to improve future prediction.

# 9.2 Static Branch Prediction

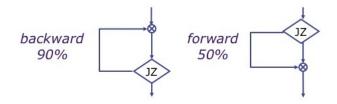


Figure 9.2: Branch probabilities for forward and backward branches

It turns out that in real codes, the probability that a branch is taken can correlate to the branch direction, i.e., whether the branch is forward (towards a higher PC) or backward (towards a lower PC). Fig. 9.2 illustrates the situation.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Of course, these probabilities also depend on the compiler's code generation choices.

Based on this observation, an ISA designer can pro-actively attach preferred direction semantics to particular opcodes, so that compilers can take advantage of this. For example, in the Motorola MC88110, the **bne0** opcode (branch if not equal to zero) is a *preferred taken* opcode, i.e., it is used in situations where the branch is more often taken. Conversely, the **beq0** opcode (branch if equal to zero) is a *preferred not taken* opcode, and is used in situations where the fall-through is more frequent.

The Hewlett Packard PA-RISC and the Intel IA-64 ISAs went further, allowing an arbitrary (static) choice of predicted direction. Measurements indicate that this achieves an 80% accuracy.

### 9.3 Dynamic Branch Prediction

Dynamic branch predictor have a "learning" or "training" component. As a program is executed, it records some information about how each branch instruction actually resolves (not taken or taken and, if taken, to which new PC). It uses this information in predictions future executions of these branch instructions. If branch behavior were random, this would be useless. Fortunately, branch behaviors are often correlated:

- Temporal correlation: the way a branch resolves may be a good predictor of how it will resolve on the next execution. For example, the loop-exit branch for a loop with 1000 iterations will resolve the same way for the first 999 iterations. The return address of a function called in the loop may be the same for every iteration.
- Spatial correlation: Several branches may resolve in a highly correlated manner (e.g., to follow a preferred path of execution).

There is very large number of branch prediction schemes described in the literature and in actual products. Their importance grows with the depth of the processor pipeline, since the penalty is proportional to this depth. Even a particular processor implementation nowadays may use multiple branch prediction schemes. Each scheme is typically easy to understand in the abstract and in isolation. But there is considerable subtlety in how each scheme is integrated into the pipeline, and how multiple schemes might interact with each other. Fortunately, the atomic rule ordering semantics of BSV gives us a clean semantic framework in which to analyze and design correct implementations of such schemes.

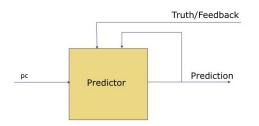


Figure 9.3: Dynamic prediction is a feedback control system

As illustrated in Fig. 9.3, dynamic prediction can be viewed as a dynamic feedback control system with the main mechanism sitting in the Fetch stage. It has two basic activities:

- *Predict*: In the forward direction, the Fetch logic needs an immediate prediction of the next PC to be fetched.
- Upate: It receives feedback from downstream stages about the accuracy of its prediction ("truth"), which it uses to update its data structures to improve future predictions.

The key pieces of information of interest are: Is the current instruction a branch? Is it taken or not taken (direction)? If taken, what is the new target PC? These pieces of information may become known known at different stages in the pipeline. For example:

Instruction	Direction known after	Target known after
J	After Decode	After Decode
$_{ m JR}$	After Decode	After Register Read
BEQZ, BNEZ	After Execute	After Decode

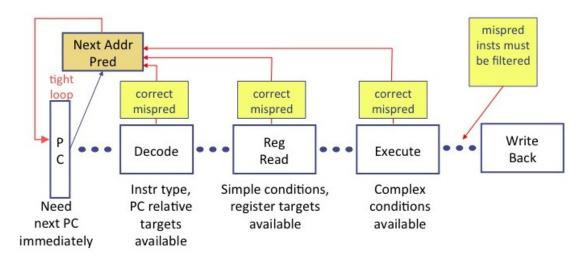


Figure 9.4: Overview of control flow prediction

A predictor can redirect the PC only after it has the relevant information. Fig. 9.4 shows an overview of branch (control flow) prediction. In the Fetch stage there is a tight loop that requires a next-PC prediction for every instruction fetched. At this point the fetched instruction is just an opaque 32-bit value. After the Decode, we know the type of instruction (including opcodes). If it is an unconditional absolute or fixed PC-relative branch, we also know the target. After the Register Read stage, we know targets that are in registers, and we may also know some simple conditions. Finally, in the Execute stage, we have complete information. Of course, once we have recognized a misprediction, we must kill (filter out) all mispredicted instructions without them having any effect on architectural state.

Given a PC and its predicted PC (ppc), a misprediction can be corrected (used to redirect the pc) as soon as it is detected. In fact, pc can be redirected as soon as we have a "better" prediction. However, for forward progress it is important that a correct PC should never be redirected. For example, after the Decode stage, once we know that an instruction is a branch, we can use the past history of the that instruction to immediately check if the direction prediction was correct.

### 9.4 A first attempt at a better Next-Address Predictor (NAP)

Find another branch? There's a NAP for that!

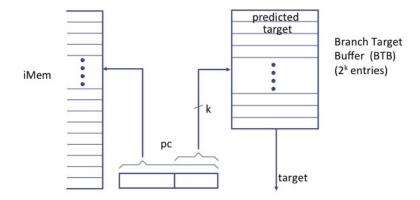


Figure 9.5: A first attempt at a better Next-Address Predictor

Fig. 9.5 illustrates a proposed Next-Address Predictor (NAP). Conceptually we could have a table mapping each PC in a program to another PC, which is its next-PC prediction. This table is called the *Branch Target Buffer* (BTB). Unfortunately, this table would be very large. So, we approximate it with a table that has just  $2^k$  entries. For prediction, we simply fetch the next-PC from this table using k bits of the PC. Later, when we recognize a misprediction, we update this table with the corrected information.

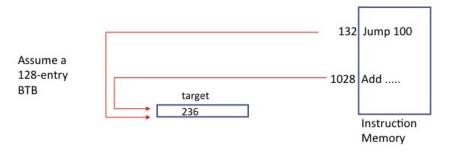


Figure 9.6: Address collisions in the simple BTB

Of course, the problem is that many instructions (where those k bits of their PCs are identical) will map into the same BTB location. This is called an address collision, or *aliasing* (a similar issue arises in caches, hash tables, etc.). Fig. 9.6 illustrates the problem. Instructions at PC 132 and 1028 have the same lower 7 bits, and so they will map to the same location in a 128-entry BTB. If we first encounter the Jump instruction at PC 128, the entry in the table will be 236 (132 + 4 + 100). Later, when we encounter the Add instruction at PC 1028, we will mistakenly predict a next-PC of 236, instead of 1032. Unfortunately, with such a simple BTB, this would be quite a common occurrence. Fortunately, we can improve our BTB to ameliorate this situation, which we discuss in the next section.

### 9.5 An improved BTB-based Next-Address Predictor

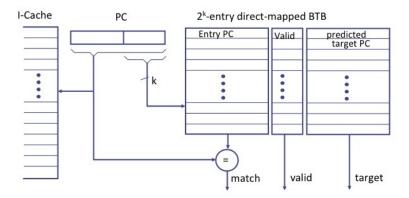


Figure 9.7: An improved BTB

This particular problem of address collisions is a familiar problem—we also encounter it in hash tables and caches. The solution is standard: if k bits are used for the table index, store the remaining 32 - k bits of the PC in the table as a *tag* that disambiguates multiple PCs that might map to the same location. This is illustrated in Fig. 9.7. Given a PC, we use k bits to index the table, and then we check the remaining 32 - k bits against the tag to verify that this entry is indeed for this PC and not for one of its aliases. If the entry does not match, we use a default prediction of PC+4.

Secondly, we only update the table with entries for actual branch instructions, relying on the default PC+4 prediction for the more common case where the instruction is not a branch. The "valid" bits in the table are initially False. When we update an entry we set its valid bit to True.

Note that this prediction is based only on the PC value of an instruction, i.e., before we have decoded it. Measurements have shown that even very small BTBs, which now hold entries only for branch instructions, are very effective in practice.

#### 9.5.1 Implementing the Next-Address Predictor

As usual, we first define the interface of our predictor:

```
Interface for next-address predictor
    interface AddrPred;
1
        method Addr
                        predPc (Addr pc);
\mathbf{2}
        method Action update (Redirect rd);
3
    endinterface
4
\mathbf{5}
    typedef struct {
6
       Bool
              taken;
                          // branch was taken
7
        Addr pc;
8
        Addr nextPC;
9
    } Redirect
10
      deriving (Bits)
11
```

The predPC method is used in Fetch's tight loop to predict the next PC. The update method carries a Redirect struct that contains information about what really happened, to train the predictor. A simple PC+4 predictor module (which we've been using so far) implementing this interface is shown below:

Next, we show the code for a BTB-based predictor. We use a register file for the actual table, which is fine for small tables, but we can easily substitute it with an SRAM for larger tables.

```
_ BTB-based predictor module _
    typedef struct {
1
       Addr
                ppc;
2
       BtbTag tag;
3
    } BTBEntry
4
      deriving (Bits);
\mathbf{5}
6
    module mkBTB (AddrPred);
7
       RegFile #(BtbIndex, Maybe #(BTBEntry)) btb <- mkRegFileFull;</pre>
8
9
       function BtbIndex indexOf (Addr pc) = truncate (pc >> 2);
10
       function BtbTag
                                    (Addr pc) = truncateLSB (pc);
                           tagOf
11
12
       method Addr predPc (Addr pc);
13
          BtbIndex index = indexOf (pc);
14
          BtbTag
                    tag
                           = tagOf (pc);
15
          if (btb.sub (index) matches tagged Valid .entry &&& entry.tag == tag)
16
              return entry.ppc;
17
          else
18
              return (pc + 4);
19
       endmethod
20
21
       method Action update (Redirect redirect);
22
          if (redirect.taken) begin
23
              let index = indexOfPC (redirect.pc);
24
                                      (redirect.pc);
              let tag
                        = tagOfPC
25
              btb.upd (index,
26
                        tagged Valid (BTBEntry {Addr:redirect.nextPc, tag:tag}));
27
           end
28
       endmethod
29
    endmodule
30
```

# 9.6 Incorporating the BTB-based predictor in the 2-stage pipeline

Below, we show our 2-stage pipeline (including scoreboard for data hazard management), modified to incorporate the BTB-based predictor. The changes are marked with *NEW* comments.

```
_{-} 2-stage pipeline with BTB _{-}
    module mkProc(Proc);
1
        Reg#(Addr)
                            pc <- mkRegU;</pre>
\mathbf{2}
        RFile
                            rf <- mkRFile;</pre>
3
        IMemory
                          iMem <- mkIMemory;</pre>
4
                          dMem <- mkDMemory;
        DMemory
\mathbf{5}
        Fifo#(Decode2Execute) d2e <- mkFifo;</pre>
6
        Reg#(Bool)
                        fEpoch <- mkReg(False);</pre>
7
        Reg#(Bool)
                        eEpoch <- mkReg(False);</pre>
8
        Fifo#(Addr) execRedirect <- mkFifo;</pre>
9
                           btb <- mkBtb;</pre>
                                                              // NEW
        AddrPred
10
11
        Scoreboard#(1) sb <- mkScoreboard;</pre>
12
13
        rule doFetch;
14
           let inst = iMem.req(pc);
15
           if (execRedirect.notEmpty) begin
16
               if (execRedirect.first.mispredict) begin
                                                                  // NEW
17
                  fEpoch <= !fEpoch;</pre>
18
                  pc <= execRedirect.first.ppc;</pre>
19
               end
20
               btb.update (execRedirect.first);
                                                         // NEW
21
               execRedirect.deq;
22
           end
23
           else begin
24
               let ppc = btb.predPc (pc);
                                                  // NEW
25
               let dInst = decode(inst);
26
               let stall = sb.search1(dInst.src1)|| sb.search2(dInst.src2);
27
               if (! stall) begin
28
                  let rVal1 = rf.rd1 (validRegValue (dInst.src1));
29
                  let rVal2 = rf.rd2 (validRegValue (dInst.src2));
30
                  d2e.eng (Decode2Execute {pc: pc,
31
                                               nextPC: ppc,
32
                                               dlinst: dlnst,
33
                                                epoch: fEpoch,
34
                                               rVal1: rVal1,
35
                                               rVal2: rVal2});
36
                  sb.insert(dInst.rDst); pc <= ppc; end</pre>
37
               end
38
           end
39
        endrule
40
```

```
41
       rule doExecute;
42
           let x = d2e.first;
43
           let dInst = x.dInst; let pc
                                             = x.pc;
44
           let ppc
                     = x.ppc;
                                  let epoch = x.epoch;
45
           let rVal1 = x.rVal1; let rVal2 = x.rVal2;
46
           if (epoch == eEpoch) begin
47
              let eInst = exec(dInst, rVal1, rVal2, pc, ppc);
48
              if (eInst.iType == Ld)
49
                 eInst.data <- dMem.req (MemReq{op:Ld,</pre>
50
                                                    addr:eInst.addr, data:?});
51
              else if (eInst.iType == St) begin
52
                 let d <- dMem.req (MemReq{op:St,</pre>
53
                                              addr:eInst.addr, data:eInst.data});
54
              end
55
              if (isValid (eInst.dst))
56
                 rf.wr (validRegValue(eInst.dst), eInst.data);
57
              // ---- NEW begin
58
              if (eInst.iType == J || eInst.iType == Jr || eInst.iType == Br)
59
                 execRedirect.enq (Redirect{pc: pc,
60
                                               nextPc: eInst.addr,
61
                                               taken: eInst.brTaken,
62
                                               mispredict: eInst.mispredict,
63
                                               brType: eInst.iType});
64
              // ---- NEW end
65
              if (eInst.mispredict) eEpoch <= !eEpoch;</pre>
66
              d2e.deq;
67
              sb.remove;
68
       endrule
69
    endmodule
70
```

In line 10 we instantiate the BTB. In the Fetch rule, in lines 17-20, we change the epoch and the PC only if execRedirect says it's describing a misprediction. In line 21 we update the BTB. In line 25 we use the BTB to perform our next-address prediction. In the Execute rule, in lines 58-65, if it is a branch-type instruction, we send information back to the BTB about what really happened.

# 9.7 Direction predictors

Conceptually, a direction predictor for a branch instruction is just a boolean (1 bit) that says whether the branch was taken or not. Unfortunately, using just 1 bit is fragile. Consider the branch for a loop-exit in a loop with 1000 iterations. For 999 iterations, it branches one way (stays in the loop), and the last iteration branches the other way (exits the loop). If we remember just 1 bit of information, we will only remember the exit direction, even though the probability is 0.999 in the other direction. This can be rectified by incorporating a little hysteresis into the control system. Suppose we remember 2 bits of information, treating it

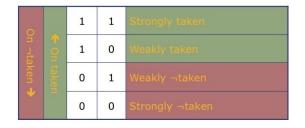


Figure 9.8: 2 bits to remember branch direction

as a 2-bit saturating counter. Every time we branch one way, we increment the counter, but we saturate (don't wrap around) at 3. When we branch the other way, we decrement the counter, but we saturate (don't wrap around) at 0. This is illustrated in Fig. 9.8. Now, it takes 2 mispredictions to change the direction prediction. Of course, this idea could be generalized to more bits, increasing the hysterisis.

Fig. 9.9 shows a Branch History Table to implement this idea. Note that this cannot be used any earlier than the Decode stage, because we consult the table only on Branch opcodes (which become known only in Decode). Again, we use k bits of the PC to index the table, and again we could use tags (the remaining 32 - k bits of the PC) to disambiguate due to aliasing. In practice, measurements show that even a 4K-entry BHT, with 2 bits per entry, can produce 80%-90% correct predictions.

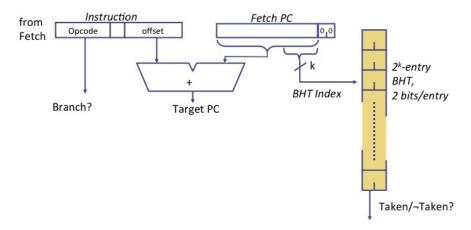


Figure 9.9: The Branch History Table (BHT)

Where does this information for updating the BHT come from? Once again, it comes from the Execute stage. In the next section, we discuss how multiple predictors, such as the BTB and BHT, are systematically incorporated into the pipeline.

# 9.8 Incorporating multiple predictors into the pipeline

Fig. 9.10 shows a sketch of an N-stage pipeline with just one prediction mechanism, the BTB (the figure only shows N = 3 stages, but the same structure holds for N > 3. In Execute, if there is an epoch mismatch, we mark the instruction as "poisoned" and send it on. Semantically, we are "dropping" or "discarding" the instruction, but in the implementation

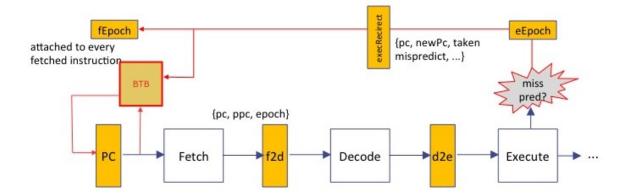


Figure 9.10: N-stage pipeline, with one predictor (BTB) only

the "poisoned" attribute tells downstream stages to use it only for book-keeping and cleanup, such as removing it from the scoreboard, and not to let it affect any architectural state. If there is no epoch mismatch but it is a branch instruction that was mispredicted, then change the eEpoch. If it is a branch, send the true information back to the Fetch stage.

In Fetch: when it receives a redirect message from Execute, use it to train the BTB, and to change epoch and redirect PC if necessary.

Fig. 9.11 shows how we incorporate 2 predictors into the pipeline, such as adding the BHT into the Decode stage. Since this stage, also, can now detect mispredictions, we provide it with its own epoch register dEpoch which is incremented when this happens. The Fetch stage now has two registers, feEpoch and fdEpoch which are approximations of Decode's dEpoch and Execute's eEpoch, respectively. Finally, Decode gets a deEpoch register that is an approximation of Execute's eEpoch register. In summary: each mispredict-detecting stage has its own epoch register, and each stage has a register that approximates downstream epoch registers. In all this, remember that Execute's redirect information (the truth) should never be overridden.

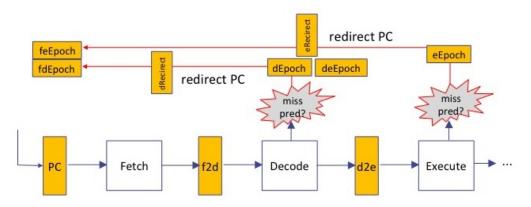


Figure 9.11: N-stage pipeline, with two predictors

Fig. 9.12 illustrates how redirection works. The Fetch stage now attached two epoch numbers to each instruction it sends downstream, the values from both fdEpoch and feEpoch. We refer to these values with the instruction as idEp and ieEp, respectively.

The Execute stage behaves as before, comparing the *ieEp* (on the instruction) with

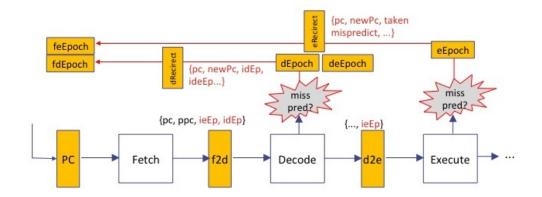


Figure 9.12: N-stage pipeline, with two predictors and redirection logic

its eEpoch register. In Decode, if ieEp (on the instruction) is different from its deEpoch register, then it now learns that the Execute stage has redirected the PC. In this case, it updates both its epoch registers dEpoch and deEpoch from the values on the instruction, idEp and ieEp, respectively. Otherwise, if idEp (on the instruction) is different from its dEpoch register, then this is a wrong-path instruction with respect to on one of its own redirections, and so it drops the instruction. For non-dropped instructions, if the predicted PC on the instruction differs from its own prediction (using the BHT), it updates its dEpoch register and sends the new information to the Fetch stage.

The Fetch stage can now receive redirect messages from both the Execute and Decode stages. Messages from Execute are treated as before. For a message from Decode, if  $ideEp \neq feEpoch$ , then this is a message about a wrong-path instruction, so we ignore this message. Otherwise, we respond to the message by redirecting the PC and updating fdEpoch.

#### 9.8.1 Extending our BSV pipeline code with multiple predictors

Now that we understand the architectural ideas behind incorporating multiple predictors in the pipeline, let us modify our BSV code for the pipeline accordingly. We shall work with a 4-stage pipeline, F (Fetch), D&R (Decode and Register Read), E&M (Execute and Memory), and W (Writeback). This version will have no predictor training, so messages are sent only for redirection.

```
2-stage pipeline with BTB
    module mkProc (Proc);
1
        Reg#(Addr)
                              pc <- mkRegU;</pre>
2
                              rf <- mkBypassRFile;</pre>
        RFile
3
                            iMem <- mkIMemory;</pre>
        IMemory
4
        DMemory
                            dMem <- mkDMemory;
\mathbf{5}
        Fifo#(1, Decode2Execute) d2e <- mkPipelineFifo;</pre>
6
        Fifo#(1, Exec2Commit)
                                       e2c <- mkPipelineFifo;</pre>
7
        Scoreboard#(2) sb <- mkPipelineScoreboard;</pre>
8
        // ---- NEW section begin
9
        Reg#(Bool)
                         feEp <- mkReg(False);</pre>
10
        Reg#(Bool)
                         fdEp <- mkReg(False);</pre>
11
        Reg#(Bool)
                         dEp <- mkReg(False);</pre>
12
```

```
deEp <- mkReg(False);</pre>
       Reg#(Bool)
13
       Reg#(Bool)
                       eEp <- mkReg(False);</pre>
14
       Fifo#(ExecRedirect) execRedirect <- mkBypassFifo;</pre>
15
       Fifo#(DecRedirect) decRedirect <- mkBypassFifo;</pre>
16
       AddrPred#(16) addrPred <- mkBTB;
17
       DirPred#(1024) dirPred <- mkBHT;</pre>
18
       // ---- NEW section end
19
20
       rule doFetch;
21
           let inst = iMem.req(pc);
22
           if (execRedirect.notEmpty) begin
23
              feEp <= !feEp;</pre>
24
              pc <= execRedirect.first.newPc;</pre>
25
              execRedirect.deq;
26
           end
27
           else if (decRedirect.notEmpty) begin
28
              if (decRedirect.first.eEp == feEp) begin
29
                 fdEp <= ! fdEp;</pre>
30
                 pc <= decRedirect.first.newPc;</pre>
31
              end
32
              decRedirect.deq;
33
           end
34
           else begin
35
                                                                        // NEW
              let ppc = addrPred.predPc (pc);
36
              f2d.enq (Fetch2Decoode {pc: pc, ppc: ppc, inst: inst,
37
                                         eEp: feEp, dEp: fdEp});
                                                                       // NEW
38
           end
39
       endrule
40
41
       function Action decAndRegFetch(DInst dInst, Addr pc, Addr ppc, Bool eEp);
42
           action
43
              let stall = sb.search1(dInst.src1)|| sb.search2(dInst.src2)
44
                            || sb.search3(dInst.dst);
                                                            // WAW hazard check
45
              if (!stall) begin
46
                 let rVal1 = rf.rd1 (validRegValue (dInst.src1));
47
                 let rVal2 = rf.rd2 (validRegValue (dInst.src2));
48
                 d2e.enq (Decode2Execute {pc: pc, ppc: ppc,
49
                                            dInst: dInst, epoch: eEp,
50
                                            rVal1: rVal1, rVal2: rVal2});
51
                 sb.insert (dInst.rDst);
52
              end
53
54
           endaction
       endfunction
56
       rule doDecode;
57
           let x = f2d.first; let inst = x.inst; let pc = x.pc;
58
           let ppc = x.ppc; let idEp = x.dEp; let ieEp = x.eEp;
59
           let dInst = decode(inst);
60
```

```
let newPc = dirPrec.predAddr(pc, dInst);
61
           if (ieEp != deEp) begin // change Decode's epochs and
62
                                      // continue normal instruction execution
63
              deEp <= ieEp; let newdEp = idEp;</pre>
64
              decAndRegRead (inst, pc, newPc, ieEp);
65
               if (ppc != newPc) begin
66
                  newDEp = !newdEp;
67
                  decRedirect.enq (DecRedirect {pc: pc,
68
                                                  newPc: newPc, eEp: ieEp});
69
               end
70
              dEp <= newdEp
71
           end
72
           else if (idEp == dEp) begin
73
              decAndRegRead (inst, pc, newPc, ieEp);
74
               if (ppc != newPc) begin
75
                  dEp <= !dEp;
76
                  decRedirect.enq (DecRedirect {pc: pc,
77
                                                  newPc: newPc, eEp: ieEp});
78
               end
79
           end
80
           f2d.deq;
81
        endrule
82
83
        rule doExecute;
84
           let x = d2e.first;
85
           let dInst = x.dInst; let pc
                                             = x.pc;
86
           let ppc
                      = x.ppc;
                                  let epoch = x.epoch;
87
           let rVal1 = x.rVal1; let rVal2 = x.rVal2;
88
           if (epoch == eEpoch) begin
89
              let eInst = exec (dInst, rVal1, rVal2, pc, ppc);
90
              if (eInst.iType == Ld)
91
                  eInst.data <- dMem.req (MemReq {op:Ld, addr:eInst.addr, data:?});</pre>
92
              else if (eInst.iType == St)
93
                  let d <- dMem.req (MemReq {op:St, addr:eInst.addr, data:eInst.data});</pre>
94
              e2c.eng (Exec2Commit {dst:eInst.dst, data:eInst.data});
95
               if (eInst.mispredict) begin
96
                  execRedirect.eng (eInst.addr);
97
                  eEpoch <= !eEpoch;</pre>
98
              end
99
           end
100
           else
101
               e2c.enq (Exec2Commit {dst:Invalid, data:?});
102
           d2e.deq;
103
        endrule
104
105
        rule doCommit;
106
           let dst = eInst.first.dst;
107
           let data = eInst.first.data;
108
```

Lines 10-19 instantiate all the new modules and state needed for the predictors. Line 38, in the Fetch rule, attaches two epoch values to each instruction sent downstream. Lines 62-80 in the Decode rule perform the decode-stage prediction that we just described. They use the function shown on lines 42-55. The Execute and Commit rules are completely unchanged from before.

# 9.9 Conclusion

This chapter has again shown the value of thinking about processor pipelines as distributed systems (logically independent units communicating with messages) instead of as a globally synchronous state machine. Trying to manage the complex concurrency issues around multiple branch predictors by thinking about the pipeline as a globally synchronous machine can be very, very difficult and error-prone. The concept of epochs, distributed approximations of the epoch, and messages whose exact latency does not affect correctness, allow us to design a solution that is clean and modular, and whose correctness is easier to reason about.

# Chapter 10

# Exceptions

# 10.1 Introduction

Interrupts, traps and exceptions are "infrequent" events that occur unpredictably during normal instruction execution. These could be *synchronous* or *asynchronous*. Synchronous exceptions occur due to some problem during a particular instruction's execution: undefined opcodes, privileged instructions attempted in user mode, arithmetic overflows, divide by zero, misaligned memory accesses, page faults, TLB misses, memory access protection violations, traps into the OS kernel, and so on. Asynchronous exceptions occur due to some external event requiring the processor's attention: timer expiry, signal for an event of interest in an I/O device, hardware failures, power failures, and so on.

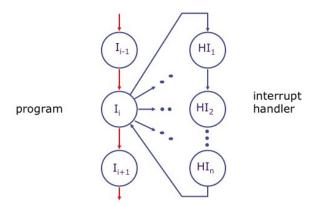


Figure 10.1: Instruction flow on an interrupt

When such an interrupt occurs, the normal flow of instructions is temporarily suspended, and the processor executes code from a *handler*. This is illustrated in Fig. 10.1. When the handler completes, the processor resumes the interrupted normal flow. Of course, we must take care that handler execution does not disturb the architectural state of the normal flow, so that it can be resumed cleanly.

# 10.2 Asynchronous Interrupts

An asynchronous interrupt is typically initiated by an external device (such as a timer or I/O device) by asserting one of the *prioritized interrupt request lines* (IRQs) to get the processor's attention. The processor may not respond immediately, since it may be in the middle of a critical task (perhaps even in the middle of responding to a previous interrupt).

Most ISAs have a concept of *precise interrupts*, i.e., even though the processor may have a deep pipeline with many instructions simultaneously in flight, even though it may be executing instructions in superscalar mode or out of order, there is always a well-defined notion of the interrupt occurring precisely between two instructions  $I_{j-1}$  and  $I_j$  such that it is as if  $I_{j-1}$  has completed and updated its architectural state, and  $I_j$  has not even started.

When the interrupt occurs, the processor saves the PC of instruction  $I_j$  in a special register, epc. It disables further interrupts, and jumps to a designated interrupt handler and starts running in kernel mode. Disabling is typically done by writing to an *interrupt* mask register which has a bit corresponding to each kind of interrupt or each external interrupt line; when a bit here is 0, the processor ignores interrupts from that source. Kernel mode (also sometimes called supervisor mode or privileged mode) is a special mode allowing the processor full access to all resources on the machine; this is in contrast to user mode, which is the mode in which normal application code is executed, where such accesses are prohibited (by trapping if they are attempted). Most ISAs have this kernel/user mode distinction for protection purposes, i.e., it prevents ordinary application programs from accessing or damaging system devices or other application programs that may be time multiplexed concurrently by the operating sytem.

At the speeds at which modern processors operate, interrupts are a major disruption to pipelined execution, and so raw speed of interrupt handling is typically not of paramount concern.

#### **10.2.1** Interrupt Handlers

In effect, the processor is redirected to a handler when an interrupt occurs. What is the PC target for this redirection? In some machines it is a known address fixed by the ISA. Other machines have an *interrupt vector* at a known address, which is an array of redirection PCs. When an interrupt occurs, the kind and source of the interrupt indicate an index into this array, from which the processor picks up the redirection PC.

Once the PC has been redirected and the handler starts executing, it saves the epc (the PC of the instruction to resume on handler completion). For this, the ISA has an instruction to move the epc into a general purpose register. At least this much work must be done before the handler re-enables interrupts in order to handle nested interrupts. The ISA typically also has a status register that indicates the cause or source of the interrupt, so that the handler can respond accordingly.

On handler completion, it executes a special indirect jump instruction ERET (return from exception) which:

- enables interrupts,
- restores the processor to user mode from kernel mode, and

• restores the hardware status and control state so that instruction resumes where it left off at the interrupted instruction.

# 10.3 Synchronous Interrupts

A synchronous interrupt is caused by a particular instruction, and behaves like a control hazard, i.e., the PC has to be redirected and instructions that follow in the normal flow that are already in the pipeline have to be dropped, just like wrong-path instructions after a misprediction. As mentioned before, the ISA defines has a special register epc in which the processor stores PC+4 of the interrupted instruction, and a special ERET instruction to return to normal operation after an exception handler.

Synchronous interrupts come in two flavors:

- *Exceptions*: The instruction cannot be completed (e.g., due to a page fault) and needs to be *restarted* after the exception has been handled.
- *Faults* or *Traps*: These are like system calls, i.e., deliberate calls into kernel mode routines, and the instruction is regarded as completed.

# 10.3.1 Using synchronous exceptions to handle complex and infrequent instructions

Synchronous exceptions offer an alternative implementation for complex or infrequent instructions. For example, some processors do not implement floating point operations in hardware, because of their complexity in hardware. In such an implementation, an instruction like:

#### mult ra, rb

causes an exception, and the handler implements a floating point multiplication algorithm in software. When the instruction is encountered, PC+4 is stored in epc, the handler performs the multiplication and returns using ERET, and execution continues at PC+4 as usual.

#### 10.3.2 Incorporating exception handling into our single-cycle processor

We need to extend many of our interfaces to express exception-related information wherever necessary, in addition to the normal information. For example, a memory request will now return a 2-tuple, {memory response, memory exception}. Our instruction definitions are extended for instructions like eret and mult, and so on.

Decode has to be extended to handle the new opcodes:

```
_ Decode _
    Bit#(6) fcMULT = 6'b011000;
                                        // mult opcode
1
    Bit#(5) rsERET = 5'b10000;
                                        // eret opcode
2
3
    function DecodedInst decode(Data Inst);
4
       DecodedInst dInst = ?;
\mathbf{5}
6
        . . .
        case
7
8
           opFUNC: begin
9
                       case (funct)
10
11
                           . . .
                          fcMULT:
12
                              dInst.iType = Mult;
13
                              dInst.brFunc = AT;
14
                              dInst.rDst = Invalid;
15
                              dInst.rSrc1 = validReg (rs);
16
                              dInst.rSrc2 = validReg (rt);
17
                    end
18
           opRS: begin
19
20
                     if (rs==rsERET) begin
21
                        dInst.iType = ERet;
22
                        dInst.brFunc = AT;
23
                        dInst.rDst
                                     = Invalid;
24
                        dInst.rSrc1 = Invalid;
25
                        dInst.rSrc2 = Invalid;
26
                     end
27
                  end
28
        endcase
29
        return dInst;
30
    endfunction
31
```

We modify the code for branch address calculation to hande ERet and to redirect Mult to its software handler:

```
Branch address calculation _
    function Addr brAddrCalc (Addr pc, Data val,
1
                                IType iType, Data imm, Bool taken, Addr epc);
2
       Addr pcPlus4 = pc + 4;
3
       Addr targetAddr =
4
          case (iType)
\mathbf{5}
             J : pcPlus4[31:28], imm[27:0];
6
             Jr : val;
7
             Br : (taken? pcPlus4 + imm : pcPlus4);
8
            Mult: h'1010;
                              // Address of multiplication handler
9
            ERet: epc;
10
            Alu, Ld, St, Unsupported: pcPlus4;
11
```

```
endcase;
return targetAddr;
endfunction
```

In the code for instruction execution, we pass epc as an additional argument to the branch address calculator:

```
Instruction execution
   function ExecInst exec (DecodedInst dInst, Data rVal1,
1
                             Data rVal2, Addr pc, Addr epc);
2
3
       . . .
       let brAddr = brAddrCalc (pc, rVal1, dInst.iType,
4
                                  validValue(dInst.imm), brTaken,
                                                                    |epc]);
5
                                                                              . . .
       eInst.brAddr = ... brAddr ...;
6
       . . .
7
      return eInst;
8
   endfunction
9
```

In the Execute rule, we load epc if it is mult instruction:

```
_ Execute rule _
       rule doExecute;
1
          let inst = iMem.req (pc);
2
          let dInst = decode (inst);
3
          let rVal1 = rf.rd1 (validRegValue (dInst.src1));
4
          let rVal2 = rf.rd2 (validRegValue (dInst.src2));
5
          let eInst = exec (dInst, rVal1, rVal2, pc, epc);
6
          if (eInst.iType == Ld)
7
              eInst.data <- dMem.req (MemReq {op: Ld, addr:</pre>
8
                                                  eInst.addr, data: ?});
9
          else if (eInst.iType == St)
10
              let d <- dMem.req (MemReq {op: St, addr:</pre>
11
                                           eInst.addr, data: eInst.data});
12
          if (isValid (eInst.dst))
13
              rf.wr (validRegValue (eInst.dst), eInst.data);
14
          pc <= eInst.brTaken ? eInst.addr : pc + 4;</pre>
15
           if (eInst.iType == Mult) epc <= eInst.addr;</pre>
16
       endrule
17
```

With these changes, our single-cycle implementation handles exceptions.

# 10.4 Incorporating exception handling into our pipelined processor

Fig. 10.2 shows that synchronous exceptions can be raised at various points in the pipeline. In Fetch, the PC address may be invalid or we may encounter a page fault. In Decode, the

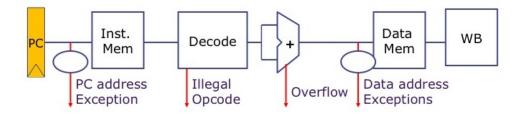


Figure 10.2: Synchronous interrupts raised at various points in the pipeline

opcode may be illegal or unimplemented. In Execute, there may be an overflow, or a divide by zero. In Memory, the data address may be invalid or we may encounter a page fault.

In fact, a single instruction can raise multiple exceptions as it passes through the pipeline. If so, which one(s) should we handle? This will be specified in the ISA (which makes no mention of the implementation question of pipelining). In an ISA, an instruction's functionality is often described in pseudocode, and this will provide a precise specification of which potential exceptions should be handled, and in what order. Normally, this order will correspond to the upstream-to-downstream order in implementation pipelines.

In the pipeline, if multiple instructions raise exceptions, which one(s) should we process? This is an easier question, since the ISA is specified with one instruction-at-a-time execution: clearly we should handle the exception from the oldest instruction in the pipeline.

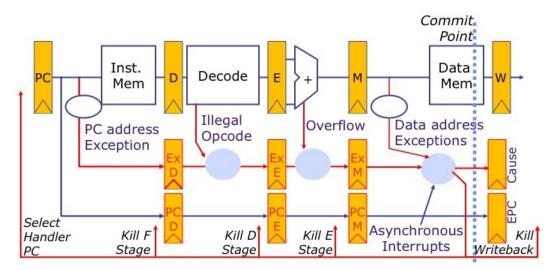


Figure 10.3: Exception handling in the processor pipeline

Fig. 10.3 illustrates that, in addition to the normal values carried down the pipeline (top of diagram), we must also carry along exception information and the PC of the instruction causing the exception (bottom of diagram). Further, we must have the ability to kill younger instructions.

In order to implement the idea of precise exceptions, we do not "immediately" respond to an exception; we carry the information along with the instruction until the final Commit stage, where instruction ordering is finally resolved. Remember also that the exception may be raised by an instruction that is later discovered to be a wrong-path instruction, in which case we should ignore it as part of killing that instruction; these questions are resolved when we reach the final Commit stage. Similarly, we can also inject external interrupts in the Commit stage, where we have precise knowledge of actual instruction ordering; in this case, we kill all instructions that logically follow the injection point.

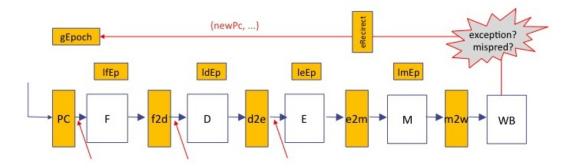


Figure 10.4: Redirection logic in the processor pipeline

Other than these exception-specific features, an exception raised in stage j is just like discovering a misprediction in stage j: we use the same epoch mechanisms and kill/poison mechanisms that we saw in dealing with control hazards in Chapter 6 to deal with redirection and instruction-dropping. This is sketched in Fig. 10.4. Every instruction carries along three pieces of information (amongst other things):

- epoch: the global epoch number with which it entered the pipeline
- poisoned: a boolean indicating whether a previous stage has already declared that this instruction should be dropped
- cause: if a previous stage raised an exception, this contains the cause

Each stage contains a local epoch register stageEp.

```
_ Each stage pseudocode _
       if (poisoned || epoch < stageEp)</pre>
1
              pass through <epoch:epoch, poisoned:True, cause:?, ...>
2
       else
3
           if (cause == None)
4
              local_cause <- do stage work</pre>
\mathbf{5}
              pass <epoch:epoch, poisoned:False, cause:local_cause, ...>
6
           else
7
              local_cause = False;
8
              pass <epoch:epoch, poisoned:False, cause:cause, ...>
9
       stageEp <= ((local_cause != None) ? (epoch+1) : epoch);</pre>
10
11
```

If an exception makes it successfully into the Commit stage, then we store the information in the cause and epc registers, and redirect Fetch to the exception handler.

	Commit stage pseudocode
1	
2	if ((cause != None)    mispredict)
3	redirect.enq (redirected PC)

Let us revisit the question of the size (bit-width) of the epoch values. We need to distinguish 3 cases:

- <: represents a wrong-path instruction
- $\bullet$  =: represents a normal instruction
- >: represents a normal path instruction where a later stage caused a redirect

Thus, 3 values are enough, so 2 bits are enough.

#### 10.4.1 BSV code for pipeline with exception handling

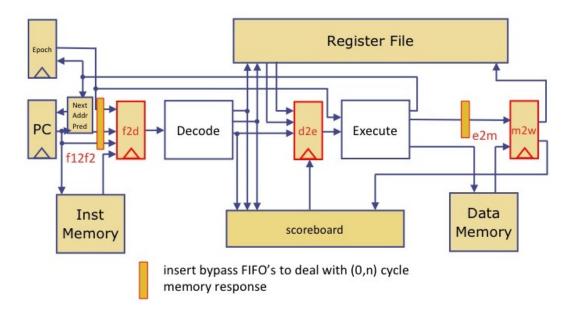


Figure 10.5: 4 stage pipeline in which we add exception handling

In the rest of this chapter we present code for a pipeline with exception handling. As a baseline, we take the 4-stage pipeline illustrated in Fig. 10.5: Fetch (F), Decode and Register Read (D&R), Execute and Memory (E&M), and Writeback (W). It has a single branch predictor and no training, i.e., messages are only sent for redirection. We also integrate Instruction and Data memories. Because (for the moment) we take these to have zero-latency (combinational) reads, we balance the corresponding part of the pipeline with BypassFIFOs as shown in the figure.

```
Pipeline with exception handling
    module mkProc(Proc);
1
        Reg #(Addr) pc <- mkRegU;</pre>
\mathbf{2}
        Rfile rf <- mkBypassRFile;</pre>
3
        Cache #(ICacheSize) iCache <- mkCache;</pre>
4
        Cache #(DCacheSize) dCache <- mkCache;</pre>
\mathbf{5}
6
        FIFO #(1, Fetch2Decode) f12f2 <- mkBypassFifo;</pre>
7
        FIFO #(1, EInst) e2m <- mkBypassFifo;</pre>
8
        FIFO #(1, Decode2Execute) d2e <- mkPipelineFifo;</pre>
9
        FIFO #(1, Exec2Commit) e2c <- mkPipelineFifo;</pre>
10
```

```
11
        Scoreboard #(2) sb <- mkPipelineScoreboard;</pre>
12
13
        Reg #(Epoch) globalEp <- mkReg(False);</pre>
14
        FIFO #(ExecRedirect) execRedirect <- mkBypassFifo;</pre>
15
        AddrPred #(16) addrPred <- mkBTB;
16
17
        Reg #(Epoch)
                          fEp <- mkReg(False);</pre>
                                                   // Present in 2nd fetch stage
18
        Reg #(Epoch)
                          dEp <- mkReg(False);</pre>
19
        Reg #(Epoch)
                          eEp <- mkReg(False);</pre>
20
        Reg #(Epoch)
                          mEp <- mkReg(False); // Present in 2nd execute stage</pre>
21
22
        rule doFetch1;
23
           if (execRedirect.notEmpty) begin
24
               globalEp <= next(globalEp);</pre>
25
               pc <= execRedirect.first.newPc;</pre>
26
               execRedirect.deq;
27
           end
28
           else begin
29
               iCache.req (MemReq {op: Ld, addr: pc, data:?});
30
               let ppc = addrPred.predPc (pc);
31
               f12f2.enq (Fetch2Decode {pc: pc, ppc: ppc, inst: ?,
32
                                           cause: None, epoch: globalEp});
33
           end
34
        endrule
35
36
        rule doFetch2;
37
           match inst, mCause <- iCache.resp;</pre>
38
           f12f2.deq;
39
           let f2dVal = f12f2.first;
40
           if (lessThan (f2dVal.epoch, fEp)) begin
41
               /* discard */
42
           end
43
           else begin
44
               f2dVal.inst = inst;
45
             f2dVal.cause = mCause;
46
             f2d.enq (f2dVal);
47
             if (mCause != None)
48
                 fEp <= next (fEp);</pre>
49
           end
50
        endrule
51
52
        rule doDecode;
53
           let x = f2d.first;
54
           let inst = x.inst;
55
           let cause = x.cause;
56
           let pc = x.pc;
57
           let ppc = x.ppc;
58
```

```
let epoch = x.epoch;
59
           if (lessThan (epoch, dEp)) begin
60
               /* discard */
61
62
           end
           else
63
               if (cause != None) begin
64
                  d2e.enq (Decode2Execute {pc: pc, ppc: ppc,
65
                                              dInst: ?, cause: cause, epoch: epoch,
66
                                              rVal1: ?, rVal2: ?});
67
                  dEp <= epoch;
68
69
               end
           else begin
70
               // Not poisoned and no exception in the previous stage
71
               match dInst, dCause = decode(inst);
72
               let stall = sb.search1(dInst.src1)|| sb.search2(dInst.src2)
73
                            || sb.search3(dInst.dst);
74
               if (dCause != None) begin
75
                  d2e.enq (Decode2Execute {pc: pc, ppc: ppc,
76
                                              dInst: ?, cause: dCause,
77
                                              epoch: epoch,
78
                                              rVal1: ?, rVal2: ?});
79
                  dEp <= next(epoch);</pre>
80
               end
81
               else if (!stall) begin
82
                  let rVal1 = rf.rd1 (validRegValue(dInst.src1));
83
                  let rVal2 = rf.rd2 (validRegValue(dInst.src2));
84
                  d2e.enq (Decode2Execute {pc: pc, ppc: ppc,
85
                                              dInst: dInst, cause: dCause,
86
                                              epoch: epoch,
87
                                              rVal1: rVal1, rVal2: rVal2});
88
                  dEp <= epoch;
89
                  sb.insert(dInst.rDst);
90
               end
91
92
           end
           f2d.deq;
93
        endrule
94
95
        // pc redirect has been moved to the Commit stage where exceptions are resolved
96
        rule doExecute1;
97
           let x = d2e.first;
98
           let dInst = x.dInst;
99
           let pc = x.pc;
100
           let ppc = x.ppc;
101
           let epoch = x.epoch;
102
           let rVal1 = x.rVal1;
103
           let rVal2 = x.rVal2;
104
           let cause = x.cause;
105
           if (lessThan (epoch, eEpoch))
106
```

```
e2m.enq (EInst {pc: pc, poisoned: True});
107
            else begin
108
               if (cause != None) begin
109
                   eEp <= epoch;</pre>
110
                   e2m.enq (EInst {pc: pc, poisoned: False, cause: cause});
111
               end
112
               else begin
113
                   let eInst = exec (dInst, rVal1, rVal2, pc, ppc);
114
                   e2m.enq (eInst);
115
                   if (eInst.cause == None) begin
116
117
                      // Memory operations should be done only for non-exceptions
118
                      // and non-poisoned instructions (next slide)
119
                      if (eInst.iType == Ld)
120
                         dCache.req (MemReq {op:Ld, addr:eInst.addr, data:? });
121
                      else if (eInst.iType == St)
122
                         dCache.req (MemReq {op:St,addr:eInst.addr,
123
                                                data:eInst.data});
124
125
                      if (eInst.mispredict)
126
                         eEp <= next(epoch);</pre>
127
                      else
128
                         eEp <= epoch;</pre>
129
                   end
130
                   else
131
                      eEp <= next(epoch);</pre>
132
               end
133
            end
134
            d2e.deq;
135
        endrule
136
137
        // Data Memory response stage
138
        rule doExecute2;
139
            let x = e2m.first;
140
           let eInst = x.eInst;
141
           let poisoned = x.poisoned;
142
           let cause = x.cause;
143
           let pc = x.pc;
144
           let epoch = x.epoch;
145
            if (poisoned || lessThan (epoch,mEp)) begin
146
               eInst.poisoned = True;
147
               e2c.enq (Exec2Commit {eInst: eInst, cause: ?, pc: ?, epoch: ?});
148
            end
149
            else begin
150
               if (cause != None) begin
151
                  mEp <= epoch;</pre>
152
                   e2c.enq (Exec2Commit {eInst:eInst,cause:cause,
153
                                            pc:pc,epoch:epoch});
154
```

```
end
155
            else begin
156
               if (eInst.iType == Ld || eUbst.iType == St) begin
157
                   match data, mCause <- dCache.resp; eInst.data = data;</pre>
158
                   if (mCause == None)
159
                      mEp <= epoch;</pre>
160
                   else
161
                      mEp <= next(epoch);</pre>
162
                   e2c.enq (Exec2Commit {eInst:eInst, cause:mCause, pc:pc});
163
               end
164
               else begin
165
                  mEp <= epoch;</pre>
166
                   e2c.enq (Exec2Commit {eInst:eInst, cause:None, pc:pc});
167
               end
168
            end
169
        endrule
170
171
        rule doCommit;
172
           let x = e2c.first;
173
           let cause = x.cause;
174
           let pc = x.pc;
175
           e2c.deq;
176
           if (! (iMemExcep (cause) || iDecodeExcep (cause)))
177
               sb.remove;
178
           if (! x.eInst.poisoned) begin
179
               if (cause == None) begin
180
                   let y = validValue (x.eInst);
181
                   let dst = y.dst;
182
                   let data = y.data;
183
                   if (isValid (dst))
184
                      rf.wr (tuple2 (validValue (dst), data);
185
                   if (eInst.mispredict)
186
                      execRedirect.enq(eInst.addr);
187
188
               end
               else begin
189
                   let newpc = excepHandler (cause);
190
                   eret <= pc;</pre>
191
                   execRedirect.enq (newpc);
192
               end
193
            end
194
        endrule
195
     endmodule
196
```

# Chapter 11

# Caches

# 11.1 Introduction

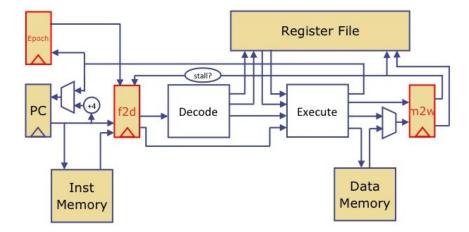


Figure 11.1: 4 stage pipeline

Fig. 11.1 recaps our 4-stage pipeline structure from previous chapters. So far, we have just assumed the existence of an Instruction Memory and a Data Memory which we can access with zero delay (combinationally). Such "magic" memories were useful for getting started, but they are not realistic.

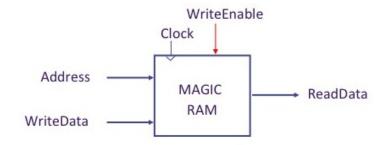


Figure 11.2: Simple memory model

Fig. 11.2 shows a model of one of these simple memories. When an address is presented to the module, the data from the corresponding location is available immediately on the ReadData bus. If WriteEnable is asserted, then the WriteData value is immediately written to the corresponding address. In real systems, with memories of realistic sizes and a realistic "distance" from the processor, reads and writes can take many cycles (even 100s to 1000s of cycles) to complete.

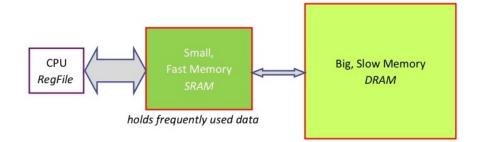


Figure 11.3: A memory hierarchy

Unfortunately it is infeasible to build a memory that is simultaneously large (capacity), fast (access time) and consumes low power. As a result, memories are typically organized into hierarchies, as illustrated in Fig. 11.3. The memory "near" the processor is typically an SRAM (Static Random Access Memory), with limited capacity and high speed. This is backed up by a much larger (and slower) memory, usually in DRAM (Dynamic RAM) techology. The following table gives a general comparison of of their properties (where << means "much less than"):

size (capacity in bytes):	RegFile	<<	SRAM	<<	DRAM
density (bits/mm <sup><math>2</math></sup> ):	RegFile	<<	SRAM	<<	DRAM
latency (read access time):	RegFile	<<	SRAM	<<	DRAM
bandwidth (bytes per second):	RegFile	>>	SRAM	>>	DRAM
power consumption (watts per bit):	RegFile	>>	SRAM	>>	DRAM

This is because, as we move from RegFiles to SRAMs to DRAMs, we use more and more highly specialized circuits for storage, and to multiplex data in and out of the storage arrays.

The idea of a cache is that we use fast (low latency), nearby memory as a temporary container for a subset of the memory locations of interest. When we want to read an address, if it is in the cache (a "hit"), we get the data quickly. If it is not in the cache (a "miss"), we must first invoke a process that brings that address from the backing memory into the cache, which may take many cycles, before we can service the original request. To do this we may also need to throw out or write back something else from the cache to the backing memory (which raises the question: which current item in the cache should we choose to replace with the new one?).

If, in a series of n accesses, most of them hit in the cache (we call this a high "hit rate"), then the overhead of processing a few misses is amortized over the many hits. Fortunately, most programs exhibit both spatial locality and temporal locality, which leads to high hit rates. Spatial locality means that if a program accesses an address A, it is likely to access nearby addresses (think of locations in an array, or fields in a struct, or sequences of instructions in instruction memory). Temporal locality means that much data is accessed more than once within a short time window.

When we want to write an address, we are again faced with various choices. If that location is currently cached (a "write hit"), we should of course update it in the cache, but we could also immediately send a message to the backing memory to update its original copy; this policy is called *Write-through*. Alternatively, we could postpone updating the original location in backing memory until this address must be ejected from the cache (due to the need to use the space it occupies for some other cache line); this policy is called *Writeback*.

When writing, if the location is not currently cached, we could first bring the location into the cache and update it locally; this policy is called *Write-allocate*. Alternatively, we could just send the write to backing memory; this policy is called *Write-no-allocate* or *Write-around*.

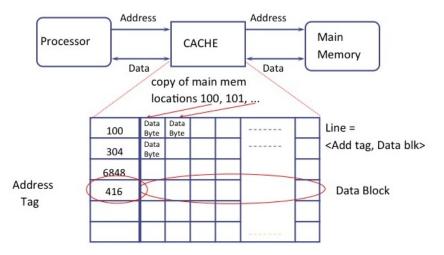


Figure 11.4: Sketch of the information in a cache

Fig. 11.4 illustrates the key information held in a cache. Each entry (each row shown) has an address tag, identifying to which (main memory) address A this entry corresponds. Along with this is a *cache line*, which is a vector of bytes corresponding to addresses A, A+1, A+2, ..., A+k-1 for some small fixed value of k. For example, a modern machine may have cache lines of 64 bytes. There are several reasons for holding data in cache-line-sized chunks. First, spatial and temporal locality suggest that when one word of the cache line is accessed, the other words are likely to be accessed soon. Second, the cost of fetching a line from main memory is so high that it's useful to amortize it over larger cache lines, and the buses and interconnects to memory are often more efficient in transporting larger chunks of data. Finally, The larger the cache line, the fewer things to search for in the cache (resulting in smaller tags, for example).

Conceptually, a cache is an *associative* or *content-addressable* memory, i.e., to retrieve an entry with main memory address A we must search the cache for the entry with the address tag of A. A common software example of such a structure is a hash table. This poses an engineering challenge: it is not easy to build large *and* fast associative memories (we typically want a response in just 1 cycle if it is a cache hit). Solutions to this problem are the subject of this chapter.

Cache misses are usually classified into three types:

- Compulsory misses: The first time a cache line is accessed, it must be a miss, and it must be brought from memory into the cache. On large, long-running programs (billions of instructions), the penalty due to compulsory misses becomes insignificant.
- *Capacity misses*: This is a miss on a cache line that used to be in the cache but was ejected to make room for some other line, and so had to be retrieved again from backing memory.
- Conflict misses: Because large, fast, purely associative memories are difficult to build, most cache organizations have some degree of direct addressing using some of the bits of the candidate address. In this case, two addresses  $A_1$  and  $A_2$ , where those bits are the same, may map into the same "bucket" in the cache. If  $A_1$  is in the cache and we then want to read  $A_2$ , we may have to eject  $A_1$ , which may then be required again later; such a miss is called a conflict miss.

#### 11.2 Cache organizations

Large, fast, purely associative memories are difficult to build. Thus, most caches compromise by incorporating some degree of direct addressing, using some of the bits of the target address as a direct address of the cache memories. Direct addressing and associative lookup can be mixed to varying degrees, leading to the following terminology:

- *Direct-Mapped caches* only use direct addressing. Some subset of the bits of the original address (typically the lower-order bits) are used directly as an address into the cache memory. Different addresses where the subset of bits have the same value will *collide* in the cache; only one of them can be held in the cache.
- N-way Set-Associative caches first, like direct-mapped caches, use some of the address bits directly to access the cache memory. However, the addressed location is wide enough to hold N entries, which are searched associatively. For different addresses where the subset of bits have the same value, N of them can be held in the cache without a collision.

Fig. 11.5 illustrates the organization of a direct-mapped cache. We use k bits (called the Index field) of the original address directly to address the  $2^k$  locations of the cache memory. In that entry, we check the Valid bit (V); if invalid, the entry is empty, and we have a miss. If full, we compare the t bits of the Tag field of the address with the t bits of the Tag field of the entry, to see if it is for the same address or for some other address that happens to map to the same bucket due to having the same Index bits. If it matches, then we have a hit, and we use the b bits of the Offset field of the original address to extract the relevant byte(s) of the cache line.

Fig. 11.6 illustrates how we could have swapped the choice of t and k bits for the Index and Tag from the original address. In fact, any partitioning of the top t + k bits into t and k bits would work. But it is hard to say which choice will result in a higher hit rate, since it depends on how programs and data are laid out in the address space.

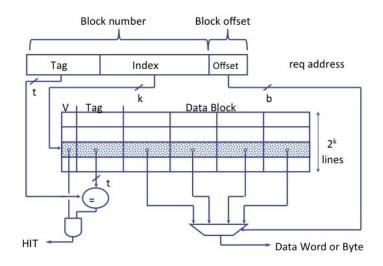


Figure 11.5: Direct-mapped cache organization

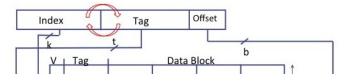


Figure 11.6: Choice of which bits to use in a direct mapped cache

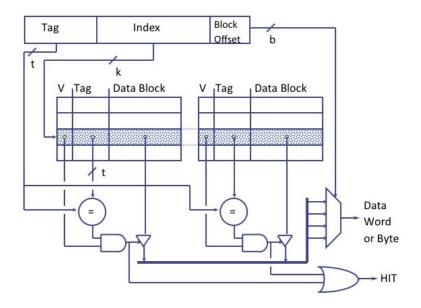


Figure 11.7: 2-way set-associative cache organization

Fig. 11.7 illustrates a 2-way set-associative cache. From a lookup point of view, it is conceptually like two direct-mapped caches in parallel, and the target may be found on either side. This can, of course, easily be generalized in principle to wider (4-way, 8-way,  $\dots$ ) associativity. But note that it costs more hardware: in particular, more comparators to test all k candidates in parallel.

The k entries at each location in the cache truly form a *set*, i.e., we will be careful not to place duplicates in these entries, so that they represent distinct addresses, and do not waste cache resources. Thus, set-associativity is likely to improve the hit rate for the program, and thereby improve average memory access time which, in turn, should improve program performance. The average access time is given by the formula:

average acces time = hit probability  $\times$  hit time + miss probability  $\times$  miss time

#### 11.2.1 Replacement policies

When a new cache line is to be brought in, usually it is necessary to eject another to make room for it. Which one should we eject? For direct-mapped caches, there is no choice there is precisely one candidate entry. For k-way set-associative caches, we must choose one of the k candidates. There are many policies used in practice:

- Prefer lines that are "clean", i.e., lines that have been not been updated in the cache, and so are identical to the copy in backing store, and so can simply be thrown away. The complementary "dirty" lines must incur the overhead of writing them back to backing memory. Note that in Harvard architectures (where we do not dynamically modify code), cache lines in the instruction cache are always clean.
- A "fair" choice policy that does not always favor some members of the k-set over others. Such policies include LRU (Least Recently Used), MRU (Most Recently Used), Random, and Round-Robin. There is no "best" policy, since the effectiveness of each policy depends on how it interacts with the access patterns of a particular program. Only actual measurements on actual programs can determine what is a good policy choice (for that set of programs).

#### 11.2.2 Blocking and Non-blocking caches

In some pipelined processors, when a Ld (load) instruction misses in the cache, it is possible that another Ld instruction following it closely in the pipeline also issues a request to the cache. What should the cache's behavior be in this situation?

Blocking caches only service one memory request at a time, i.e., they do not accept another request until they have completed the response to the previous one. In the case of a cache miss, this could be a delay of hundreds of cycles while it send a request and waits for a response from backing memory.

Non-blocking caches continue to accept requests while waiting to handle a miss on a previous request. These subsequent requests may actually hit in the cache, and the cache may be able to send that response immediately, out of order. Non-blocking caches typically have some bound on the number of requests that can simultaneously be in flight.

# 11.3 A Blocking Cache Design

In this section we will examine a design for a blocking cache with single-word cache lines, and with writeback and no-write-miss-allocate policies.

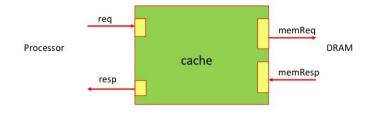


Figure 11.8: A cache interface

Fig. 11.8 shows the interface to a cache. In BSV:

```
_ Cache interface
    interface Cache;
1
      method Action
                                    req (MemReq r);
2
      method ActionValue #(Data) resp;
3
4
      method ActionValue #(MemReq) memReq;
\mathbf{5}
      method Action
                                      memResp (Line r);
6
    endinterface
7
```

On the processor side of the cache, the processor sends a memory request (of type MemReq) to the cache using the req method. It retrieve a response (of type Data) from the cache using the resp method. On the memory side of the cache, the memory (or the bus) receives a memory request from the cache by using the memReq method (usually due to a cache miss), and returns a response to the cache using the memResp method. All methods are guarded so, for example, the req method will block until the cache yields a response via the resp method. The memReq will block until the cache is ready to issue a request to memory. The req to resp path essentially behaves like a 1-element FIFO: until a response is delivered ("dequeued"), the next request cannot be accepted ("enqueued").

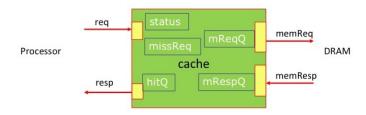


Figure 11.9: State elements in the cache

Fig. 11.9 shows the state elements of the cache, which are specified in the BSV code for the cache module, below.

```
Cache module
```

```
typedef enum { Ready, StartMiss, SendFillReq, WaitFillResp } CacheStatus
deriving (Eq, Bits);
```

```
3
    module mkCache (Cache);
4
       // Controls cache state machine
\mathbf{5}
       Reg #(CacheStatus) status <- mkReg (Ready);</pre>
6
7
       // The cache memory
8
       RegFile #(CacheIndex, Line)
                                                     dataArray <- mkRegFileFull;</pre>
9
       RegFile #(CacheIndex, Maybe #(CacheTag)) tagArray
                                                                  <- mkRegFileFull;
10
       RegFile #(CacheIndex, Bool)
                                                     dirtyArray <- mkRegFileFull;</pre>
11
12
                                     <- mkBypassFIFO; // Allows 0-cycle hit responses
       FIFO #(Data)
                           hitQ
13
       Reg #(MemReq)
                           missReq <- mkRegU;</pre>
14
15
       FIFO #(MemReq) memReqQ <- mkCFFIFO;</pre>
16
       FIFO #(Line)
                        memRespQ <- mkCFFIF0;</pre>
17
18
       function CacheIndex idxOf (Addr addr) = truncate (addr >> 2);
19
                            tagOf (Addr addr) = truncateLSB (addr);
       function CacheTag
20
21
       rule startMiss (status == StartMiss);
22
           let idx = idxOf (missReq.addr);
23
           let tag = tagArray.sub (idx);
24
           let dirty = dirtyArray.sub (idx);
25
           if (isValid (tag) && dirty) begin // writeback
26
              let addr = {validValue(tag), idx, 2'b0};
27
              let data = dataArray.sub (idx);
28
              memReqQ.enq (MemReq {op: St, addr: addr, data: data});
29
           end
30
           status <= SendFillReq;</pre>
31
       endrule
32
33
       rule sendFillReq (status == SendFillReq);
34
           memReqQ.enq (missReq);
35
           status <= WaitFillResp;</pre>
36
       endrule
37
38
       rule waitFillResp (status == WaitFillResp);
39
           let idx = idxOf (missReq.addr);
40
           let tag = tagOf (missReq.addr);
41
           let data = memRespQ.first;
42
           dataArray.upd (idx, data);
43
           tagArray.upd (idx, tagge Valid tag);
44
           dirtyArray.upd (idx, False);
45
           hitQ.eng (data);
46
           memRespQ.deq;
47
           status <= Ready;</pre>
48
       endrule
49
50
```

```
method Action req (MemReq r) if (status == Ready);
51
           let idx = idxOf (r.addr);
52
           let hit = False;
53
           if (tagArray.sub (idx) matches tagged Valid .currTag
54
               &&& currTag == tagOf (r.addr))
55
              hit = True;
56
           if (r.op == Ld) begin
57
              if (hit)
58
                  hitQ.enq (dataArray.sub (idx));
59
              else begin
60
                  missReq <= r;</pre>
61
                  status <= StartMiss;</pre>
62
              end
63
           end
64
           else begin // It is a store request
65
              if (hit) begin
66
                  dataArray.upd(idx, r.data);
67
                  dirtyArray.upd (idx, True);
                                                     // for a 1-word cache line
68
              end
69
              else
70
                  memReqQ.enq(r); // write-miss no allocate
71
           end
72
        endmethod
73
74
        method ActionValue#(Data) resp;
75
           hitQ.deq;
76
           return hitQ.first;
77
        endmethod
78
79
        method ActionValue#(MemReq) memReq;
80
           memReqQ.deq;
81
           return memReqQ.first;
82
        endmethod
83
84
        method Action memResp (Line r);
85
           memRespQ.enq(r);
86
        endmethod
87
    endmodule
88
```

The cache behavior is a state machine that normally rests in the Ready state. On a miss, it goes into the StartMiss state, sending a fill request (and possibly a writeback) to memory. It waits for the response in the WaitFillResp state. When the response arrives, it performs final actions, including sending a response to the processor, and returns to the Ready state. The type for this state is defined on lines 1 and 2.

The cache memory itself is implemented on lines 9-11 using mkRegFileFull for pedagogical convenience; more realistically, it would be implemented with an SRAM module. The hitQ on line 13 is a BypassFIFO to enable a 0-cycle (combinational) response on hits. More realistic caches typically do not give a 0-cycle response, in which case this can become an ordinary FIFO or a PipelineFIFO.

The memory request and response FIFOs on lines 16-17 are conflict-free FIFOs because they totally isolate the cache from the external memory system, and they are in any case not performance-critical. The two functions on lines 19-20 are just convenience functions to extract the appropriate bits from index and tag bits of an address.

The req method only accepts requests in the Ready state. It tests for a hit on lines 54-55 by indexing the tag array, checking that it is valid, and checking that the entry's tag matches the tag of the address. Line 59 handles a hit for a Load request; the response is entered in hitQ. Lines 61-62 start the miss-handling state machine. Line 67-68 handle Store requests that hit. The data is stored in the cache entry and the entry is marked dirty (remember, we are implementing a writeback policy, and so this write is not communicated to memory until the line is ejected). This example code assumes one Data word per cache line; for longer cache lines, we'd have to selectively update only one word in the line. In the write-miss case, we merely send the request on to memory, i.e., we do not allocate any cache line for it.

The remaining methods are just interfaces into some of the internal FIFOs. The processor receives its response from hitQ.

The startMiss rule on line 22 fires when the req method encounters a miss and sets state to StartMiss. It checks if the current cache entry is dirty and, if so, writes it back to memory. Finally, it enters the SendFillReq state, which is handled by the sendFillReq rule which sends the request for the missing line to memory. It waits for the response in the WaitFillResp state. When the response arrives, the waitFillResp rule stores the memory response in the cache entry and resets its dirty bit, enters the response into hitQ, and returns to the Ready state.

Note that in case of a Load-miss, if the cache line is not dirty, then the startMiss rule does nothing (line 29 is not executed). In general, a few idle cycles like this don't seriouly affect the miss penalty (if it is important, it is possible to code it to avoid idle cycles like this).

#### 11.4 Integrating caches into the processor pipeline

Integrating the Instruction and Data Caches into the processor pipeline is quite straightforward. The one issue that might bear thinking about is that the caches have a variable latency. Each cache behaves like a FIFO for Loads: we "enqueueue" a Load request, and we later "dequeue" its response. In the case of a hit, the response may come back immediately; whereas in the case of miss, the response may come back after many (perhaps 100s) of cycles. But this is not a problem, given our methodology from the beginning of structuring our pipelines as elastic pipelines that work correctly no matter what the delay of any particular stage.

Fig. 11.10 shows our 4-stage pipeline. The orange boxes are FIFOs that carry the rest of the information associated with an instruction (instruction, pc, ppc, epoch, poison, ...) while a request goes through the corresponding cache "FIFO". In other words, we are conceptually forking the information; one part goes through our in-pipeline FIFO and the

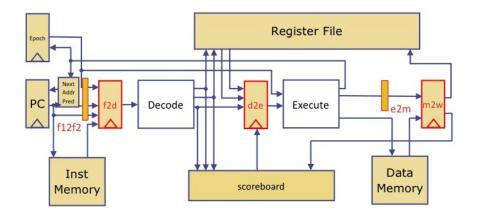


Figure 11.10: Integrating caches into the pipeline

other part goes through the cache. These pieces rejoin on the other side of the FIFOs. Because of the elastic, flow-controlled nature of all the components, all of this just works.

The one nuance we might consider is that, if the caches can return responses in 0 cycles (combinationally, on a hit), then the accompanying FIFOs in the pipeline should be BypassFIFOs, to match that latency.

## 11.5 A Non-blocking cache for the Instruction Memory (Read-Only)

In this section we show a non-blocking cache for the Instruction Memory. Remember that in Harvard architectures, Instruction Memory is never modified, so there are no Store requests to this cache, nor are there ever any dirty lines. Non-blocking caches for Data Memory (Read-Write) are significantly more complicated, and we discuss them briefly in the Conclusion section.

Fig. 11.11 shows the structure of the non-blocking cache. The key new kind of element is the "Completion Buffer" (CB), on the top right of the diagram. A CB is like a FIFO. The reserve method is like an "early" enqueue operation, in that we reserve an ordered place in the FIFO, with a promise to deliver the data later using the complete method. When we reserve the space, the CB gives us a "token" with our reservation, which is essentially a placeholder in the FIFO. When we later complete the enqueue operation, we provide the data and the token, so that the CB knows exactly where to place it in the FIFO. The drain method is just like dequeing the FIFO: it drains it in order, and will block until the actual data has arrived for the first reserved space in the FIFO. The Completion Buffer is a standard package in the BSV library.

Below, we show the BSV code for the non-blocking read-only cache. The completion buffer is instantiated in line 6. The parameter 16 specifies the capacity of the completion buffer, i.e., which allows the non-blocking cache to have up to 16 requests in flight.

The **req** method first reserves a space in the cb fifo. Then, if it is a hit, it completes the operation immediately in the cb fifo. If it is a miss, it sends the request on to memory, and enqueues the token and the request in the **fillQ**, in lines 35-36. Note that the **req** method is immediately available now to service the next request, which may be a hit or a miss.

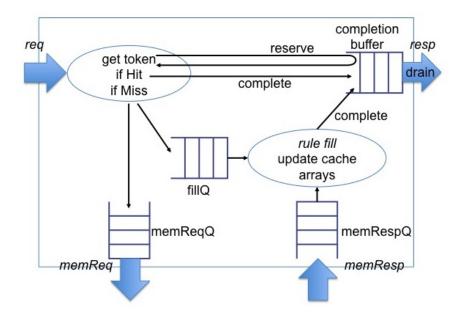


Figure 11.11: Non-blocking cache for Instruction Memory

Independently, when a fill response comes back from memory, the fill rule collects it and the information in the fillQ, updates the cache information and then invokes the complete method on the completion buffer. In the meanwhile, the req method could have accepted several more requests, some of which may be hits that are already in the completion buffer.

The **resp** method returns the responses in the proper order by using the **drain** method of the completion buffer.

```
Non-blocking Read-Only Cache module
    module mkNBCache (Cache);
1
       // The cache memory
2
       RegFile #(CacheIndex, Line)
                                                    dataArray <- mkRegFileFull;</pre>
3
       RegFile #(CacheIndex, Maybe #(CacheTag)) tagArray
                                                                <- mkRegFileFull;
4
5
       CompletionBuffer #(16, Data) cb <- mkCompletionBuffer;</pre>
6
       FIFO #(Tuple2 #(Token, MemReq)) fillQ <- mkFIFO;</pre>
7
8
       FIFO #(MemReq) memReqQ <- mkCFFIFO;</pre>
9
       FIFO #(Line)
                       memRespQ <- mkCFFIF0;</pre>
10
11
       function CacheIndex idxOf (Addr addr) = truncate (addr >> 2);
12
                           tagOf (Addr addr) = truncateLSB (addr);
       function CacheTag
13
14
       rule fill;
15
                 .token, .req = fillQ.first; fillQ.deq;
          match
16
          data = memRespQ.first; memRespQ.deq;
17
18
          let idx = idxOf (req.addr);
19
          let tag = tagOf (req.addr);
20
```

```
dataArray.upd (idx, data);
21
           tagArray.upd (idx, tagged Valid tag);
22
23
           cb.complete.put (tuple2 (token, dataArray.sub (idx)))
24
       endrule
25
26
       method Action req (MemReq r);
27
           let token <- cb.reserve.get;</pre>
28
           if (tagArray.sub (idxOf (r.addr)) matches tagged Valid .currTag
29
               &&& currTag == tagOf (r.addr))
30
              // hit
31
              cb.complete.put (token, dataArray.sub (idx));
32
           else begin
33
              // miss
34
              fillQ.enq (tuple2 (token, r));
35
              memReqQ.enq (r);
                                    // send request to memory
36
           end
37
       endmethod
38
39
       method ActionValue#(Data) resp;
40
           let d <- cb.drain.get</pre>
41
           return d;
42
       endmethod
43
44
       method ActionValue#(MemReq) memReq;
45
           memReqQ.deq;
46
           return memReqQ.first;
47
       endmethod
48
49
       method Action memResp (Line r);
50
           memRespQ.enq (r);
51
       endmethod
52
    endmodule
53
```

How big should the fillQ be? Suppose it has size 2. Then, after the req method has handled 2 misses by sending 2 requests to memory and enqueuing 2 items into fillQ, then fillQ is full until the first response from memory returns and rule fill dequeues an item from fillQ. Method req will then be stuck on the next miss, since it will be blocked from enqueueing into fillQ. Thus, the capacity of fillQ is a measure of how many requests to memory can be outstanding, i.e., still in flight without a response yet. This choice is a design decision.

#### 11.5.1 Completion Buffers

Here we show the code for a Completion Buffer, which is quite easy to implement using EHRs. First, here are some type definitions for completion buffer tokens (FIFO placehold-

ers) and the interface. The interface is parameterized by n, the desired capacity, and t, the type of data stored in the buffer.

```
Completion Buffer token and interface types
                      UInt #(TLog #(n)) ix;
   typedef struct
                                                CBToken2 #(numeric type n)
1
   deriving (Bits);
2
3
   interface CompletionBuffer2 #(numeric type n, type t);
4
      interface Get #(CBToken2 #(n))
                                                     reserve;
5
      interface Put #(Tuple2 #(CBToken2 #(n), t)) complete;
6
      interface Get #(t)
                                                     drain:
7
   endinterface
8
```

```
_ Completion Buffer module _
    module mkCompletionBuffer2 (CompletionBuffer2 #(n, t))
1
       provisos (Bits #(t, tsz),
2
                  Log #(n, logn));
3
4
       // The following FIFOs are just used to register inputs and outputs
5
       // before they fan-out to/fan-in from the vr_data array
6
       FIFOF #(Tuple2 #(CBToken2 #(n), t)) f_inputs <- mkFIFOF;</pre>
7
                                               f_outputs <- mkFIFOF;</pre>
       FIFOF #(t)
8
9
       // This is the reorder buffer
10
       Vector #(n, Reg #(Maybe #(t))) vr_data <- replicateM (mkInvalidReg);</pre>
11
12
       // Metadata for the reorder buffer
13
       EHR #(3, Tuple3 #(UInt #(logn),
14
                           UInt #(logn),
15
                           Bool))
                                           ehr_head_next_full
16
                                           <- mkEHR (tuple3 (0,0, False));
17
18
               .head0, .next0, .full0 = ehr_head_next_full.ports [0];
       match
19
       match
               .head1, .next1, .full1 = ehr_head_next_full.ports [1];
20
21
       function UInt #(logn) modulo_incr (UInt #(logn) j);
22
          return ( (j == fromInteger (valueOf (n) - 1)) ? 0 : j+1);
23
       endfunction
24
25
       rule rl_move_inputs;
26
          let t2 = f_inputs.first; f_inputs.deq;
27
          match .tok, .x = t2;
28
          vr_data [tok.ix] <= tagged Valid x;</pre>
29
       endrule
30
31
       rule rl_move_outputs (vr_data [head0] matches tagged Valid .v
32
                               &&& ((head0 != next0) || full0));
33
          vr_data [head0] <= tagged Invalid;</pre>
34
          ehr_head_next_full.ports [0] <= tuple3 (modulo_incr (head0),</pre>
35
```

```
next0, False);
36
          f_outputs.enq (v);
37
       endrule
38
39
       // -----
                               40
       // Interface
41
42
       interface Get reserve;
43
          method ActionValue #(CBToken2 #(n)) get () if (! full1);
44
             let next1_prime = modulo_incr (next1);
45
             ehr_head_next_full.ports [1] <= tuple3 (head1,</pre>
46
                                                       next1_prime,
47
                                                       (head1==next1_prime));
48
             return CBToken2 ix: next1 ;
49
          endmethod
50
       endinterface
51
52
       interface complete = toPut (f_inputs);
53
                           = toGet (f_outputs);
       interface drain
54
    endmodule
55
```

#### 11.6 Conclusion

In the previous section, even though the non-blocking cache could accept and service multiple requests, it returned responses in standard FIFO order. More sophisticated processor designs will expose the out-of-order responses into the processor, i.e., the cache would return responses immediately, and the processor may go ahead to execute those instructions if it were safe to do so. In this case, the processor itself will associate a token with each request, and the cache would return this token with the corresponding response; this allows the processor to know which request each response corresponds to.

Non-blocking caches for the Data Memory are more complex, because we can then encounter RAW (Read-After-Write) hazards corresponding to memory locations, analogous to the RAW hazards we saw in Chapter 8 that concerned register file locations. For example, suppose the cache gets a read request  $Q_1$  which misses; it initiates the request to memory, and is pending the response. Suppose now it gets a write request  $Q_2$  for the same cache line. Clearly it must wait for the pending memory read response; it must respond to the processor for  $Q_1$  based on the data returned from memory; and only then can it process  $Q_2$ by updating the cache line. If we allow several such interactions to be in progress across different cache lines, the design becomes that much more complex.

In this chapter we have barely scratched the surface on the subject of caches. Highperformance memory systems, which revolve around clever cache design, is one of the major subjects in Computer Architecture, since it is such a major determinant of program and system performance.

# Chapter 12

# Virtual Memory

#### 12.1 Introduction

Almost all modern general-purpose processors implement a virtual memory system. Virtual memory systems, sketched in Fig. 12.1, simultaneously addresses many requirements.

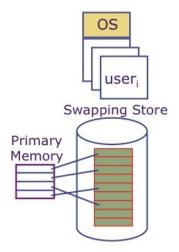


Figure 12.1: Virtual Memory by Paging between physical memory and secondary store

Large address spaces: many applications need large address spaces for the volume of data to which they need random access. Further, modern computer systems often multiplex amongst several such applications. Virtual memory systems permit these larger "memories" actually to reside on large, cheap secondary stores (primarily magnetic disk drives), using a much smaller, but more expensive, DRAM memory as a cache for the disk. For historical reasons, this DRAM memory is also called *core memory*<sup>1</sup> or *physical memory*.

Just as an SRAM cache temporarily holds cache lines from DRAM, in virtual memory systems DRAM temporarily holds *pages* from secondary store. Whereas cache line sizes are typically a few tens of bytes (e.g., 64 bytes), page sizes typically range from 512 Kilobytes

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Since the days (principally the 1960s and 1970s) when memories were implemented using magnetic cores.

(small) to 4 or 8 kilobytes (more typical). The disk is also known as a *swapping* store, since pages are swapped between physical memory and disk.

*Protection and Privacy*: Even in a single user system, the user's application should not be allowed, inadvertently or maliciously, to damage the operating systems code and data structures that it uses to manage all the devices in the system. In a multi-user system, one user's application program should not be allowed to read or damage another users's application code or data.

*Relocatability, dynamic libraries and shared dynamic libraries*: We should be able to generate machine code for a program independently of where it is loaded in physical memory; specifically, the PC target information in the branch instructions should not have to be changed for each loading. For several years we have also started dynamically loading program libraries on demand during program execution. And, more recently, dynamic libraries have been shared across multiple applications running at the same time, and they may not be loadable at the same address in different applications.

Paging systems for virtual memory enable a solution for these and many similar requirements.

#### 12.2 Different kinds of addresses

Fig. 12.2 shows various kinds of addresses in a system with virtual memory.



Figure 12.2: Various kinds of addresses in a Virtual Memory system

A machine language address is the address specified in machine code.

A virtual address (VA), sometimes also called an *effective address*, is a mapping from the machine language address specified by the ISA. This might involve relocation from a base address, or adding process identifier bits, segment bits, etc.

A physical address (PA) is an address in the physical DRAM memory. The virtual address is translated into a physical address through a data structure called a *Translation Lookaside Buffer* (TLB). The actual translation is always done in hardware, the the operating system is responsible for loading the TLB.

### 12.3 Paged Memory Systems

Fig. 12.3 shows how VAs are translated to PAs using a *page table*. At the top of the figure we see how we a virtual address can be interpreted as a *virtual page number* (VPN) and an *offset* within the identified page. For example, if our page sizes are 4 KB, then the lower 12 bits specify the offset and the remaining bits specify the page number. Physical memory is also divided into page-sized chunks. The VPN is used as an index into the *page table*,

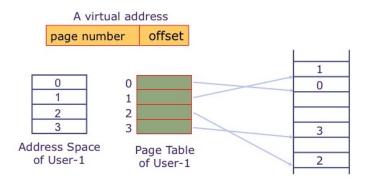


Figure 12.3: Mapping VAs to PAs using a page table

where each entry is the physical address of a page in physical memory, i.e., a *Physical Page* Number (PPN). The specified location is then accessed at the given offset within that page of physical memory. As suggested by the criss-crossing lines in the diagram, this level of indirection through the page table also allows us to store virtual pages non-contiguously in physical memory.

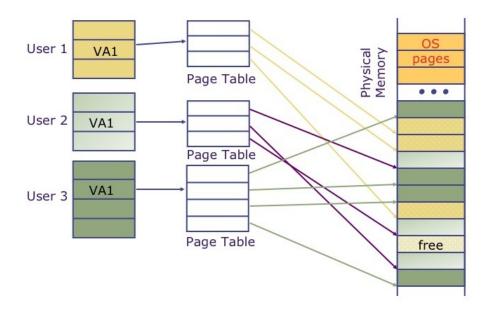


Figure 12.4: Multiple address spaces using multiple page tables

The page table indirection also enables us to share the physical memories between the Operating System and multiple users. Each such process has its own page table that maps its addresses to its pages in physical memory. In fact the mapping does not have to be disjoint: if many users are running the same application (e.g., the same web browser), we could have a single copy of the code for the web browser in physical memory, and in each page table the part of it that holds the web browser program code could point to the same, shared physical pages.

#### 12.4 Page Tables

If we have a 32-bit virtual addresses, we would need 4 Gigabytes of disk space to hold the entire address space. Disks of this size are now feasible (they were not, a decade and more ago), but of course many modern ISAs use 64-bit virtual addresses, for which it is simply infeasible to actually hold the entire virtual address space on disk. But in fact programs don't actually use that much data, so in fact page tables are usually *sparse*, i.e., many entries are simply "empty".

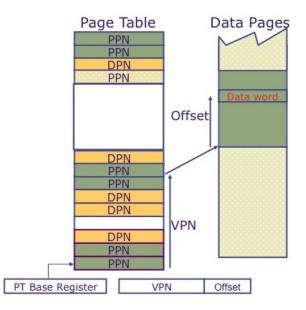


Figure 12.5: A simple linear page table

Fig. 12.5 shows a simple linear page table. Each entry in the table, called a *Page Table Entry* (PTE) typically contains at least the following information:

- A bit that indicates whether it is empty or not (valid bit).
- If valid and currently mapped to physical memory, the *Physical Page Number* (PPN) identifying the physical memory page where it is mapped.
- A *Disk Page Number* identifying the "home" page on disk where the page resides when it is not mapped into physical memory.
- Additional status and protection bits. For example, to implement the idea of a Harvard architecture, pages that contain program code may be marked "read-only"; if there is an attempt to write such page, then an exception is raised during the page table lookup.

The VPN of the virtual address is used as an index into the page table to retrieve a PTE, which is then used to access the desired word at the offset in the virtual address. Since page tables are set up by the operating system, it makes sense for page tables themselves to reside in main memory, instead of in a separate, special memory. The *PT Base Register* shown in the diagram is used to allow the OS to place the page table at a convenient address.

Page tables can be large. For example, with a 32-bit address space and 4 KB page size (= 12-bit offset), the page number is 20 bits. If each PTE takes 4 bytes, the page table will be  $2^{22} = 4$  MB. If we have multiple users and multiple processer running on the machine,

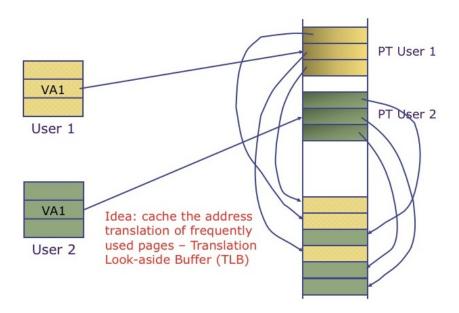


Figure 12.6: Page table for multiple address spaces in physical memory

their combined page tables themselves may run into multiple Gigabytes. The only place such large arrays will fit is in physical memory itself, as illustrated in Fig.12.6.

Of course, if we used larger pages, the page number would use fewer bits, and this would reduce the size of the page table. But larger pages have two problems. First, it may result in so-called *internal fragmentation*, where large parts of a page are unused (for example if we place each subroutine in a shared library in its own page). Second, it increases the cost of swapping a page between disk and physical memory (called the *page fault penalty*). The problem gets worse in ISAs with 64-bit addresses. Even a 1 MB page size results in 44-bit page numbers and 20-bit offsets. With 4-byte PTEs, the page table size is  $2^{46}$  bytes (70 Petabytes)! It is clearly infeasible actually to lay out such a large page table.

Fortunately, a 64-bit address space is very sparsely used, i.e., large tracts of the page table would contain "empty" PTEs. A hierarchical (tree-like) page table is a more efficient data structure for sparse page tables, and this is illustrated in Fig. 12.7. Entire subtrees representing large, contiguous, unused regions of the address space are simply "pruned" from the tree.

#### 12.5 Address translation and protection using TLBs

Fig. 12.8 shows the activities involved in translating a virtual address into a physical address. The inputs are: a virtual address, whether it is a read or a write access, and whether the request was issued by a program in kernel mode or user mode (more generally, some indication of the "capability" of the requestor to access this particular page). The VPN is looked up in the page table, as we have discussed. The read/write and kernel/user attributes are checked against the protection bits in the PTE, and if there is a violation, an exception is raised in the processor pipeline instead of performing the memory operation.

Note that these activities are performed on *every* memory access! It has to be efficient

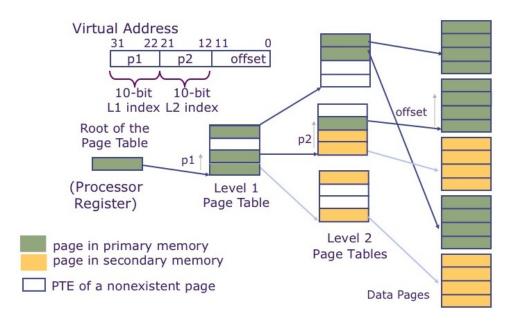


Figure 12.7: Hierarchical page tables for large, sparse address spaces

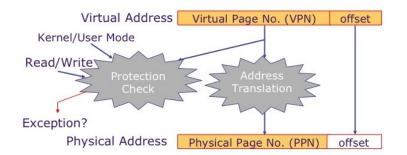


Figure 12.8: Address translation and protection

if we are to maintain program performance! For example, it is infeasible to emulate this in software; it must be done in hardware. Even in hardware, with a linear page table, each logical memory reference becomes two physical memory references, one to access the PTE and then one to access the target word. The solution, once again, is to cache PTEs in small, fast, processor-local memory. These caches are called *Translation Lookaside Buffers* (TLBs).

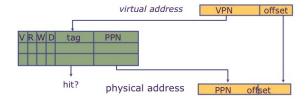


Figure 12.9: A Translation Lookaside Buffer

Fig. 12.9 shows a TLB, which is typically a very small local memory (at most a few tens of PTEs, typically). It is associatively searched for the current VPN. If successful (a hit), it immediately yields the corresponding PPN (and the protection checks can be done as well). Otherwise (it is a miss), we need to suspend operations, load the corresponding PTE, and then complete the original translation. This is called a *Page Table Walk*, since modern page tables are hierarchical and finding the PTE involves traversing the tree, starting from the root.

TLBs typically have from 32-128 entries, and are fully associative. Sometimes larger TLBs (256-512 entries) are 4- or 8-way set-associative. The *TLB Reach* is a measure of the largest chunk of virtual address space that is accessible from entries in the TLB. For example, with 64 TLB entries and 4 KB pages, the program can access  $64 \times 4 = 256$  KB of the address space (may not be contiguous).

On a miss, which entry to eject? A random or LRU policy is common. Address mappings are typically fixed for each address space, so PTEs are not updated, so there is no worry about dirty entries having to be written back.

#### 12.6 Variable-sized pages

We mentioned earlier that a uniformly large page size, though it can shrink the page table and increase the TLB hit rate, can lead to internal fragmentation and large page fault penalties. However, there are plenty of programs that can exploit large, densely occupied, contiguous regions of memory. Thus, one strategy is to support multiple page sizes. This is illustrated in Fig. 12.10.

In the diagram, a 32-bit Virtual Page Address is interpreted either as having a 20-bit VPN for a 4 KB page as before, or a 10-bit VPN for a 4 MB page (variously called "huge pages", "large pages" or "superpages"). In the translation process, we use 10 bits (p1) to access the root of the page table tree, the Level 1 page table. Information in the PTE tells us whether it directly points at a large page, or whether it points to a Level 2 page table where the remaining 10 bits (p2) will be used to locate a normal page.

The TLB has to change accordingly, and this is illustrated in Fig. 12.11. Each entry in the TLB has an extra bit indicating whether it is for a normal page or for a large page. If

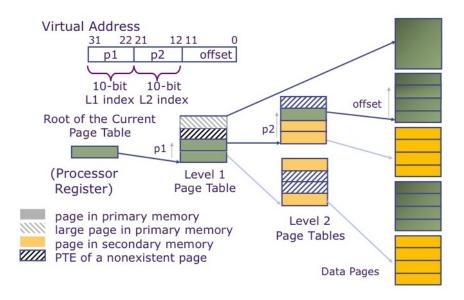


Figure 12.10: Variable-sized pages

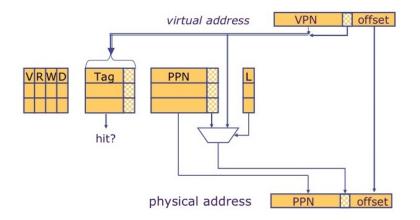


Figure 12.11: TLB for variable-sized pages

for a large page, then only the first 10 bits are matched; the TLB yields a short PPN, and the remaining address 10 bits are passed through to be concatenated into the offset. If for a normal page, then all 20 bits are matched, and the TLB yields the longer PPN for the normal page.<sup>2</sup>

#### 12.7 Handling TLB misses

The page table walk may be done in hardware or in software. For example, in the DEC Alpha AXP ISA (in the 1990s) and in the MIPS ISA, a TLB miss exception traps into a software handler which fixes up the TLB before retrying the provoking instruction. The handler executes in a privileged, "untranslated" addressing mode to perform this function (since we don't want the handler itself to encounter page faults).

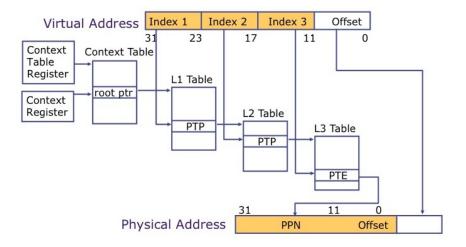


Figure 12.12: Hierarchical Page Table Walk in SPARC v8

In the SPARC v8, x86, PowerPC and ARM ISAs, the TLB walk is performed in a hardware unit called the Memory Management Unit (MMU). The hardware for a tree walk is a relatively simple state machine. If a missing data or page table page is encountered by the hardware, then the MMU abandons the attempt and raises a page-fault exception for the original memory access instruction.

Fig. 12.12 shows the hierarchical page table walk in the MMU in the SPARC v8 architecture. It is essentially a sequential descent into the page table tree using various bits of the virtual address to index into a table at each leve to retrieve the address of a sub-tree table.

Fig. 12.13 summarizes the full address translation activities. We start with a TLB lookup. If it's a hit, we do the protection check and, if permitted, we have the physical address and can perform the memory access. If there is a protection violation, we raise a "segfault" (segment fault) exception. If the TLB lookup was a miss, we do the Page Table Walk (in hardware or in software). If the page is in physical memory, we update the TLB and complete the memory operation (protection check, etc.). If the page is not in physical

 $<sup>^{2}</sup>$ Note: large and short pages will be aligned to 22 bit and 12 bit addresses, respectively, so their PPNs will have correspondingly different sizes.

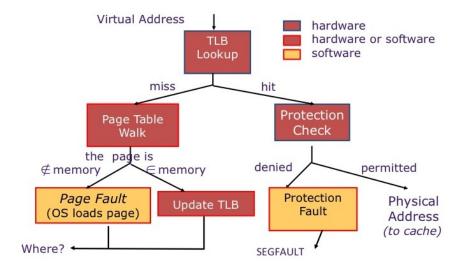


Figure 12.13: Putting it all together

memory, we raise a Page Fault exception, which traps to the operating system to swap the page in from disk, after which the original memory access can be retried.

#### **12.8** Handling Page Faults

When we encounter a page fault, i.e., a memory request for a word in a virtual page that currently only resides on disk and is not currently swapped into a physical page, the handler must perform a swap operation. The missing page must be located (or allocated) on disk. It must be copied into physical memory; the PTE for this page in the page table must be updated; and, the TLB must be loaded with this entry.

We call it a "swap" because, as is generally true in cacheing, this may require another page that is currently in physical memory to be written back to disk in order to make room for this one. We have many of the same considerations as in cacheing:

- Only dirty pages need to be written back to disk, i.e., pages whose copies in physical memory have been updated (written) since they were brought in from disk.
- The policy for selecting the "victim" page that will be overwritten (and, if dirty, first ejected back to disk). Again, possible policies include: favoring clean pages over dirty pages, random, LRU, MRU, round-robin, and so on.

Page fault handling is always done in software. Moving pages between physical memory and disk can take milliseconds, which is extremely slow compared to modern processor speeds; and well-behaved programs don't page fault too often, and so doing it in software has acceptable overheads and performance. The actual movement of page contents between disk and physical memory is usually performed by a separate hardware component called a Direct Memory Access engine (DMA): the processor merely initializes the DMA with the information about the size of the transfer and its locations in memory and disk, and the DMA engine then independently performs the copy, usually generating an interrupt to the processor when it has completed. While the DMA is doing its work, the processor switches to some other process to do some useful work in the interval, instead of waiting for this operation.

## 12.9 Recursive Page Faults

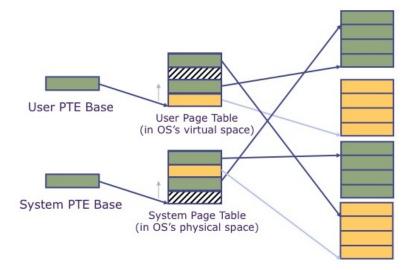


Figure 12.14: Recursive problem of TLB misses and pages faults during PT walk

During a page table walk, the MMU (or a software handler) is itself accessing memory (for the page tables). If the page tables are themselves in the operating system's virtual address space, these accesses may, in turn, miss in the TLB, which itself needs a page table walk to refill. During this walk, we may again encounter a page fault. This is a kind of recursive page fault problem. The situation (and the solution) is illustrated in Fig. 12.14. As usual in recursive situation, we need a "base case" to terminate the recursion. We do this by placing the the page table for the system in physical address space which requires no translation. The TLB miss handler, and the page fault handler, for this page table run in a special privileged mode that works directly on physical addresses. Of course, the region of physical memory used for these "pinned" data structures and codes is a special reserved region of physical memory that is not part of the pool of page frames where we swap virtual pages. The partitioning of available physical memory (which varies across computer systems) into these regions is typically done by the operating system at boot time.



A PTE in primary memory contains primary or secondary memory addresses

A PTE in secondary memory contains only secondary memory addresses

Figure 12.15: Pages of a page table

One issue about which page fault handlers must take care is illustrated in Fig. 12.15. Consider a page  $P_{PT}$  of a page table that itself resides in virtual memory. When it is in physical memory, some of its PTEs will contain physical addresses of the pages  $P_{1, 2}$ , ... which it is responsible—those final address-space pages that have also currently been swapped in. We do not want to swap out  $P_{PT}$  while  $P_1$ ,  $P_2$ , ... are still swapped in that would mean we would encounter a page fault for accesses to those pages even though they are resident in physical memory. Thus, we swap out  $P_{PT}$  only after  $P_1$ ,  $P_2$ , ... have themselves been swapped out. A corollary to this is that when  $P_{PT}$  resides on disk, all its PTEs only contain disk addresses, never physical memory addresses.

# 12.10 Integating Virtual Memory mechanisms ino the processor pipeline

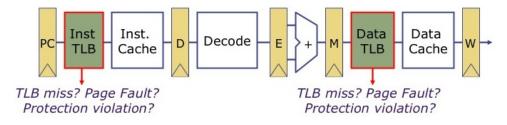


Figure 12.16: Virtual Memory operations in the processor pipeline

Fig. 12.16 shows virtual memory operations in the processor pipeline. In two places when fetching an instruction from memory, and when accessing memory for a Ld or St instruction— we may encounter TLB misses, protection violations and page faults. Each of these raises an exception and is handled using the mechanisms we studied in Ch. 10 on exceptions. These exceptions are *restartable* exceptions, i.e, the operation (instruction fetch, Ld/St instruction execution) is retried after the exception has been handled (unlike, say, a divide-by-zero exception, where we do not retry the instruction).

In the TLB boxes in the diagram, how do we deal with the additional latency needed for the TLB lookup? We can slow down the clock, giving more time for the TLB lookup operation. We can pipeline the TLB and cache access (if done in that order, the caches work on physical addresses). We can do the TLB access and cache access in parallel (in which case the cache operates on virtual addresses).

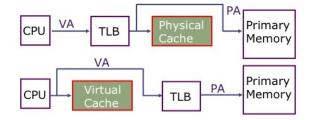


Figure 12.17: Caches based on Virtual or Physical Addresses

Fig. 12.17 shows two different organizations of TLB lookup and cache lookup. In the first case the cache works on the physical addresses that come out of TLB translation. In the

#### ©2012-2013 Arvind, R.S.Nikhil, J.Emer and M.Vijayaraghavan; All Rights Reserved 12-13

second case the cache works immediately on the virtual address from the processor pipeline. The advantage of the latter is speed: the cache lookup is initiated earlier, and in the case of a hit, the processor pipeline can proceed immediately. But it has some disadvantages as well.

First, since all processes (contexts) have the same virtual address space, we must flush the cache (empty it out completely) whenever there is a context switch. Otherwise, if address 42 from process A was in the cache, then we would accidentally have a false hit when process B tries to access its address 42, which in general has nothing to do with A's address 42. An alternative is to attach some process identifier bits to the cache tag of address, so that tags will never match across contexts.

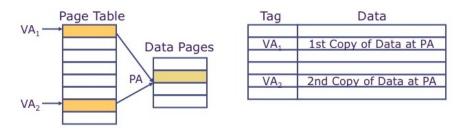


Figure 12.18: Aliasing in virtually-addressed caches

Second, we may have an *aliasing* problem due to sharing of pages. This is illustrated in Fig. 12.18 I.e., if two different PTEs map to the same physical page, then a particular word in physical memory has two different virtual addresses, and therefore may have two different entries in a virtually-addressed cache. This is problematic because, for example, suppose the program writes via one of the virtual addresses, the other entry may not be marked dirty. Worse, it violates one of the normal properties and assumptions of memory, i.e., that every memory location is independent, and that writes to one location do not magically change some other location.

The general solution to the aliasing problem is to forbid it—to never allow aliases to coexist in the cache (at least for addresses in writable pages). In early SPARCs, which had direct-mapped caches, this was enforced by making sure that VAs of shared pages agreed on cache index bits. This ensured that aliases always collided in the direct-mapped cache, so that only one could be in the cache.

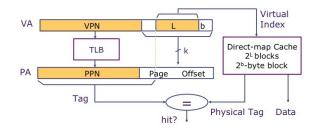


Figure 12.19: Concurrent access to the TLB and cache

Fig. 12.19 shows details of concurrent lookup in the TLB and cache. We use L bits outside the VPN bits to access the cache, since these are available before TLB lookup and invariant to the TLB translation. The cache entries contain tags based on physical addresses, which are compared with the output of TLB translation. Note that if the L field

extends into the VPN field of the address, the cache becomes partially virtually addressed, which has to dealt with as discussed earlier (e.g., disambiguating with process ids).

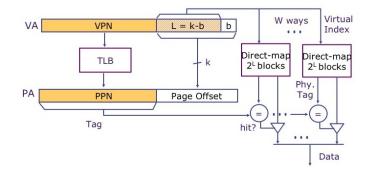


Figure 12.20: A cache with virtual index and physical tag

Fig. 12.20 shows a cache with a virtual index and physical tag. Virtual address bits are used for indexing the cache, but the cache entries contain physical addresses, which are compared against the post-TLB PPN for a hit. Of course, this can be done on direct-mapped as well as W-way set-associative caches.

#### 12.11 Conclusion

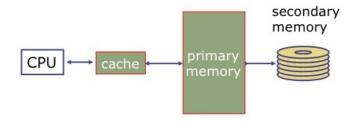


Figure 12.21: System memory hierarchy

Fig. 12.21 reprises the major components of the overall system memory hierarchy. If we were to add more detail, we would also include the register file in the processor at the top of the hierarchy, and possible multiple levels of cache, called Level 1 (L1), Level 2 (L2), Level 3 (L3) and so on. Modern processors often have 3 levels of cacheing or more. Many of the issues of cacheing are in principle the same at all levels of the memory hierarchy: associativity and lookup algorithms, clean vs. dirty, replacement policies, inclusiveness, aliasing, and so on. But the solutions are engineered differently because of their different scale (size), the size of units being cached, access patterns, and miss penalties. The table below summarizes some of the differences:

©2012-2013 Arvind,	R.S.Nikhil.	J.Emer and	l M.Vijavai	raghavan:	All Rights	Reserved 12-15
	)				- 0	

	Cacheing	Virtual Memory Demand Paging
Unit	cache line	page
	a.k.a. cache block	
Typical size	32 bytes	4 Kbytes
Container	cache entry	page frame
Typical miss rates	1% to $20%$	< 0.001%
Typical hit latencies	1 clock cycle	100 cycles
Typical miss latencies	100 clock cycles	5 M cycles
Typical miss handling	in hardware	in software

Note for current draft of the book: In this chapter we have not shown any BSV code for virtual memory components. This is only because we do not yet have the corresponding software tools needed to exercise such solutions: operating system code using privileged instructions, TLB walkers, page fault handlers, etc. We expect all these to be available with a future edition of the book.

# Chapter 13

# **Future Topics**

This chapter lists a number of potential topics for future editions of this book.

### 13.1 Asynchronous Exceptions and Interrupts

## 13.2 Out-of-order pipelines

Register renaming, data flow. Precise exceptions.

#### **13.3** Protection and System Issues

Protection issues and solutions. Virtualization. Capabilities.

### 13.4 I and D Cache Coherence

The coherence problem between Instruction and Data memories when Instruction memory is modifiable. Princeton architecture. Self-modifying code. On-the-fly optimization. JIT compiling. Binary translation.

## 13.5 Multicore and Multicore cache coherence

Multicore, SMPs.

Memory models and memory ordering semantics.

Multicore and directory-based cache coherence.

Synchronization primitives. Transactional memory.

# 13.6 Simultaneous Multithreading

 $\mathrm{SMT}$ 

## 13.7 Energy efficiency

Power and power management.

# 13.8 Hardware accelerators

Extending an ISA with HW-accelerated op codes, implemented in FPGAs or ASICs

# Appendix A

# **SMIPS** Reference

SMIPS ("Simple MIPS") is a subset of the full MIPS instruction set architecture (ISA). MIPS was one of the first commercial RISC (Reduced Instruction Set Computer) processors, and grew out of the earlier MIPS research project at Stanford University. MIPS originally stood for "Microprocessor without Interlocking Pipeline Stages" and the goal was to simplify the machine pipeline by requiring the compiler to schedule around pipeline hazards including a branch delay slot and a load delay slot (although those particular architectural choices have been abandoned). Today, MIPS CPUs are used in a wide range of devices: Casio builds handheld PDAs using MIPS CPUs, Sony uses two MIPS CPUs in the Playstation-2, many Cisco internet routers contain MIPS CPUs, and Silicon Graphics makes Origin supercomputers containing up to 512 MIPS processors sharing a common memory. MIPS implementations probably span the widest range for any commercial ISA, from simple single-issue in-order pipelines to quad-issue out-of-order superscalar processors.

There are several variants of the MIPS ISA. The ISA has evolved from the original 32-bit MIPS-I architecture used in the MIPS R2000 processor which appeared in 1986. The MIPS-II architecture added a few more instructions while retaining a 32-bit address space. The MIPS-II architecture also added hardware interlocks for the load delay slot. In practice, compilers couldn't fill enough of the load delay slots with useful work and the NOPs in the load delay slots wasted instruction cache space. (Removing the branch delay slots might also have been a good idea, but would have required a second set of branch instruction encodings to remain backwards compatible.) The MIPS-III architecture debuted with the MIPS R4000 processor, and this extended the address space to 64 bits while leaving the original 32bit architecture as a proper subset. The MIPS-IV architecture was developed by Silicon Graphics to add many enhancements for floating-point computations and appeared first in the MIPS R8000 and later in the MIPS R10000. Over time, the MIPS architecture has been widely extended, occasionally in non-compatible ways, by different processor implementors. MIPS Technologies, the current owners of the architecture, are trying to rationalize the architecture into two broad groupings: MIPS32 is the 32-bit address space version, MIPS64 is the 64-bit address space version. There is also MIPS16, which is a compact encoding of MIPS32 that only uses 16 bits for each instruction. You can find a complete description of the MIPS instruction set at the MIPS Technologies web site [5] or in the book by Kane and Heinrich [6]. The book by Sweetman also explains MIPS programming [8]. Another source of MIPS details and implementation ideas is "Computer Organization and Design: The Hardware/Software Interface" [3].

Our subset, SMIPS, implements a subset of the MIPS32 ISA. It does not include floating point instructions, trap instructions, misaligned load/stores, branch and link instructions, or branch likely instructions. There are three SMIPS variants which are discussed in more detail in Appendix A. SMIPSv1 has only five instructions and it is mainly used as a toy ISA for instructional purposes. SMIPSv2 includes the basic integer, memory, and control instructions. It excludes multiply instructions, divide instructions, byte/halfword loads/stores, and instructions which cause arithmetic overflows. Neither SMIPSv1 or SMIPSv2 support exceptions, interrupts, or most of the system coprocessor. SMIPSv3 is the full SMIPS ISA and includes all the instructions in our MIPS subset.

General Purpose Regist	ers Program Counter
31 0 <u>r31</u>	31 0 pc
r30	Multiply/Divide Registers
r1 r0	31 0 hi lo

## A.1 Basic Architecture

Figure A.1: SMIPS CPU Registers

Fig. A.1 shows the programmer visible state in the CPU. There are 31 general purpose 32-bit registers r1-r31. Register r0 is hardwired to the constant 0. There are three special registers defined in the architecture: two registers hi and lo are used to hold the results of integer multiplies and divides, and the program counter pc holds the address of the instruction to be executed next. These special registers are used or modified implicitly by certain instructions.

SMIPS differs significantly from the MIPS32 ISA in one very important respect. SMIPS does *not* have a programmer-visible branch delay slot. Although this slightly complicates the control logic required in simple SMIPS pipelines, it greatly simplifies the design of more sophisticated out-of- order and superscalar processors. As in MIPS32, Loads are fully interlocked and thus there is no programmer-visible load delay slot.

Multiply instructions perform 32-bit  $\times$  32-bit  $\rightarrow$  64-bit signed or unsigned integer multiplies placing the result in the hi and lo registers. Divide instructions perform a 32-bit/32-bit signed or unsigned divide returning both a 32-bit integer quotient and a 32-bit remainder. Integer multiplies and divides can proceed in parallel with other instructions provided the hi and lo registers are not read.

The SMIPS CPU has two operating modes: user mode and kernel mode. The current operating mode is stored in the KUC bit in the system coprocessor (COP0) status register. The CPU normally operates in user mode until an exception forces a switch into kernel mode. The CPU will then normally execute an exception handler in kernel mode before executing a Return From Exception (ERET) instruction to return to user mode.

## A.2 System Control Coprocessor (CP0)

The SMIPS system control coprocessor contains a number of registers used for exception handling, communication with a test rig, and the counter/timer. These registers are read and written using the MIPS standard MFC0 and MTC0 instructions respectively. User mode can access the system control coprocessor only if the cu[0] bit is set in the status register. Kernel mode can always access CP0, regardless of the setting of the cu[0] bit. CP0 control registers are listed in Table A.1.

Number	Register	Description
0-7		unused
8	badvaddr	Bad virtual address.
9	$\operatorname{count}$	Counter/timer register.
10		unused
11	compare	Timer compare register.
12	$\operatorname{status}$	Status register.
13	cause	Cause of last exception.
14	$_{ m epc}$	Exception program counter.
15 - 19		unused
20	fromhost	Test input register.
21	to host	Test output register.
22-31		unused

Table A.1: CP0 control registers

#### A.2.1 Test Communication Registers

31		8	7	0
	0		fro	nhost
	24			8
31		8	7	0
31	0	8	7 tol	0 nost

Figure A.2: Fromhost and Tohost Register Formats

There are two registers used for communicating and synchronizing with an external host test system. Typically, these will be accessed over a scan chain. The **fromhost** register is an 8-bit read only register that contains a value written by the host system. The **tohost** register is an 8-bit read/write register that contains a value that can be read back by the host system. The **tohost** register is cleared by reset to simplify synchronization with the host test rig. Their format is shown in Fig. A.2.

#### A.2.2 Counter/Timer Registers

SMIPS includes a counter/timer facility provided by the two coprocessor 0 registers count and compare. Both registers are 32 bits wide and are both readable and writeable. Their format is shown in Fig. A.3.

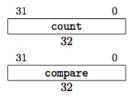


Figure A.3: Count and Compare Registers.

The count register contains a value that increments once every clock cycle. The count register is normally only written for initialization and test purposes. A timer interrupt is flagged in ip7 in the cause register when the count register reaches the same value as the compare register. The interrupt will only be taken if both im7 and iec in the status register are set. The timer interrupt flag in ip7 can only be cleared by writing the compare register. The compare register is usually only read for test purposes.

#### A.2.3 Exception Processing Registers

A number of CP0 registers are used for exception processing.

#### Status Register

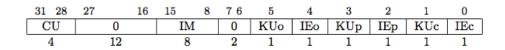


Figure A.4: Status Register Format

The status register is a 32-bit read/write register formatted as shown in Fig. A.4. The status register keeps track of the processor's current operating state.

The CU field has a single bit for each coprocessor indicating if that coprocessor is usable. Bits 29-31, corresponding to coprocessors 1, 2, and 3, are permanently wired to 0 as these coprocessors are not available in SMIPS. Coprocessor 0 is always accessible in kernel mode regardless of the setting of bit 28 of the status register.

The IM field contains interrupt mask bits. Timer interrupts are disabled by clearing im7 in bit 15. External interrupts are disabled by clearing im6 in bit 14. The other bits within the IM field are not used on SMIPS and should be written with zeros. Table A.4 includes a listing of interrupt bit positions and descriptions.

The KUc/IEc/KUp/IEp/KUo/IEo bits form a three level stack holding the operating mode (ker- nel=0/user=1) and global interrupt enable (disabled=0/enabled=1) for the current state, and the two states before the two previous exceptions.

When an exception is taken, the stack is shifted left 2 bits and zero is written into KUc and IEc. When a Restore From Exception (RFE) instruction is executed, the stack is shifted right 2 bits, and the values in KUo/IEo are unchanged.

#### Cause Register

$31 \ 16$	15	8	7	6	2	10
0	IP		0	Exc	0	
16	8		1	1	5	2

Figure A.5: Cause Register Format

The cause register is a 32-bit register formatted as shown in Fig. A.5. The cause register contains information about the type of the last exception and is read only.

The ExcCode field contains an exception type code. The values for ExcCode are listed in Table A.2. The ExcCode field will typically be masked off and used to index into a table of software exception handlers.

ExcCode	Mnemonic	Description
0	Hint	External interrupt
2	$\operatorname{Tint}$	Timer interrupt
4	AdEL	Address or misalignment error on load
5	AdES	Address or misalignment error on store
6	AdEF	Address or misalignment error on fetch
8	$\operatorname{Sys}$	Syscall exception
9	$\operatorname{Bp}$	Breakpoint exception
10	RI	Reserved instruction exception
12	Ov	Arithmetic Overflow

Table A.2: Exception Types

If the Branch Delay bit (BD) is set, the instruction that caused the exception was executing in a branch delay slot and epc points to the immediately preceding branch instruction. Otherwise,

The IP field indicates which interrupts are pending. Field **ip7** in bit 15 flags a timer interrupt. Field **ip6** in bit 14 flags an external interrupt from the host test setup. The other IP bits are unused in SMIPS and should be ignored when read. Table 4 includes a listing of interrupt bit positions and descriptions.

#### **Exception Program Counter**

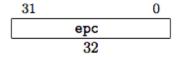


Figure A.6: EPC Register

Epc is a 32-bit read only register formatted as shown in Fig. A.6. When an exception occurs, epc is written with the virtual address of the instruction that caused the exception.

#### **Bad Virtual Address**

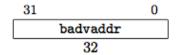


Figure A.7: Badvaddr Register

Badvaddr is a 32-bit read only register formatted as shown in Fig. A.7. When a memory address error generates an AdEL or AdES exception, badvaddr is written with the faulting virtual address. The value in badvaddr is undefined for other exceptions.

## A.3 Addressing and Memory Protection

SMIPS has a full 32-bit virtual address space with a full 32-bit physical address space. Sub-word data addressing is big-endian on SMIPS.

The virtual address space is split into two 2 GB segments, a kernel only segment (kseg) from 0x0000 0000 to 0x7fff ffff, and a kernel and user segment (kuseg) from 0x8000 0000 to 0xffff ffff. The segments are shown in Fig. A.8.

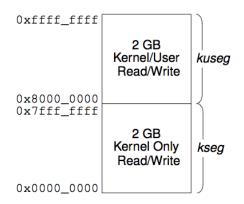


Figure A.8: SMIPS virtual address space

In kernel mode, the processor can access any address in the entire 4 GB virtual address space. In user mode, instruction fetches or scalar data accesses to the kseg segment are illegal and cause a synchronous exception. The AdEF exception is generated for an illegal instruction fetch, and AdEL and AdES exceptions are generated for illegal loads and stores respectively. For faulting stores, no data memory will be written at the faulting address.

There is no memory translation hardware on SMIPS. Virtual addresses are directly used as physical addresses in the external memory system. The memory controller simply ignores unused high order address bits, in which case each physical memory address will be shadowed multiple times in the virtual address space.

## A.4 Reset, Interrupt, and Exception Processing

There are three possible sources of disruption to normal program flow: reset, interrupts (asyn- chronous exceptions), and synchronous exceptions. Reset and interrupts occur asynchronously to the executing program and can be considered to occur *between* instructions. Synchronous exceptions occur *during* execution of a particular instruction.

If more than one of these classes of event occurs on a given cycle, reset has highest priority, and all interrupts have priority over all synchronous exceptions. The tables below show the priorities of different types of interrupt and synchronous exception.

The flow of control is transferred to one of two locations as shown in Table A.3. Reset has a separate vector from all other exceptions and interrupts.

Vector Address	Cause
0x0000_1000	Reset
0x0000_1100	Exceptions and internal interrupts

Table A.3: SMIPS Reset, Exception, and Interrupt Vectors.

#### A.4.1 Reset

When the external reset is deasserted, the PC is reset to 0x0000 1000, with kuc set to 0, and iec set to 0. The effect is to start execution at the reset vector in kernel mode with interrupts disabled. The tohost register is also set to zero to allow synchronization with the host system. All other state is undefined.

A typical reset sequence is shown in Fig. A.9.

```
reset_vector:
  mtc0 zero, $9  # Initialize counter.
  mtc0 zero, $11  # Clear any timer interrupt in compare.
  # Initialize status with desired CU, IM, and KU/IE fields.
  li k0, (CU_VAL|IM_VAL|KUIE_VAL)
  mtc0 k0, $12  # Write to status register.
  j kernel_init  # Initialize kernel software.
```

Figure A.9: SMIPS virtual address space

#### A.4.2 Interrupts

The two interrupts possible on SMIPS are listed in Table A.4 in order of decreasing priority.

Vector	ExcCode	Mnemonic	IM/IP Index	Description		
Highest Priority						
0x0000_1100	0	Hint	6	Tester interrupt.		
0x0000_1100	2	$\operatorname{Tint}$	7	Timer interrupt.		
Lowest Priority						

## Table A.4: SMIPS Interrupts.

All SMIPS interrupts are level triggered. For each interrupt there is an IP flag in the cause register that is set if that interrupt is pending, and an IM flag in the status register that enables the interrupt when set. In addition there is a single global interrupt enable bit, iec, that disables all interrupts if cleared. A particular interrupt can only occur if both IP and IM for that interrupt are set and iec is set, and there are no higher priority interrupts.

The host external interrupt flag IP6 can be written by the host test system over a scan interface. Usually a protocol over the host scan interface informs the host that it can clear down the interrupt flag.

The timer interrupt flag IP7 is set when the value in the **count** register matches the value in the **compare** register. The flag can only be cleared as a side-effect of a MTC0 write to the **compare** register.

When an interrupt is taken, the PC is set to the interrupt vector, and the KU/IE stack in the status register is pushed two bits to the left, with KUc and IEc both cleared to 0. This starts the interrupt handler running in kernel mode with further interrupts disabled. The exccode field in the cause register is set to indicate the type of interrupt.

The epc register is loaded with a restart address. The epc address can be used to restart execution after servicing the interrupt.

## A.4.3 Synchronous Exceptions

Synchronous	exceptions	are listed	in	Table	A.5	in	order	of	decreasing priority.

ExcCode	Mnemonic	Description					
	Highest Priority						
6	AdEF	Address or misalignment error on fetch.					
10	RI	Reserved instruction exception.					
8	Sys	Syscall exception.					
9	Bp	Breakpoint exception.					
12	Ov	Arithmetic Overflow.					
4	AdEL	Address or misalignment error on load.					
5	AdES	Address or misalignment error on store.					
	Lowest Priority						

Table A.5: SMIPS Synchronous Exceptions.

After a synchronous exception, the PC is set to 0x0000\\_1100. The stack of kernel/user and interrupt enable bits held in the status register is pushed left two bits, and both kuc and iec are set to 0.

The epc register is set to point to the instruction that caused the exception. The exccode field in the cause register is set to indicate the type of exception.

If the exception was a coprocessor unusable exception (CpU), the **ce** field in the **cause** register is set to the coprocessor number that caused the error. This field is undefined for other exceptions.

The overflow exception (Ov) can only occur for ADDI, ADD, and SUB instructions.

If the exception was an address error on a load or store (AdEL/AdES), the badvaddr register is set to the faulting address. The value in badvaddr is undefined for other exceptions.

All unimplemented and illegal instructions should cause a reserved instruction exception (RI).

## A.5 Instruction Semantics and Encodings

SMIPS uses the standard MIPS instruction set.

#### A.5.1 Instruction Formats

There are three basic instruction formats, R-type, I-type, and J-type. These are a fixed 32 bits in length, and must be aligned on a four-byte boundary in memory. An address error exception (AdEF) is generated if the PC is misaligned on an instruction fetch.

## **R-Type**

	31	26	$25 \ 21$	20 16	$15 \ 11$	10	6	5	0
ſ	opcode		rs	rt	rd	sha	mt	fur	nct
	6		5	5	5	5		(	3

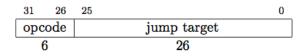
R-type instructions specify two source registers (rs and rt) and a destination register (rd). The 5-bit *shamt* field is used to specify shift immediate amounts and the 6-bit *funct* code is a second opcode field.

#### I-Type

31	26	$25 \ 21$	$20 \ 16$	15		0
opcode		rs	rt		immediate	
6	3	5	5		16	

I-type instructions specify one source register (rs) and a destination register (rt). The second source operand is a sign or zero-extended 16-bit immediate. Logical immediate operations use a zero-extended immediate, while all others use a sign-extended immediate.

#### J-Type



J-type instructions encode a 26-bit jump target address. This value is shifted left two bits to give a byte address then combined with the top four bits of the current program counter.

#### A.5.2 Instruction Categories

MIPS instructions can be grouped into several basic categories: loads and stores, computation instructions, branch and jump instructions, and coprocessor instructions.

#### Load and Store Instructions

	31 26	$25 \ 21$	$20 \ 16$	15		0
	opcode	rs	rt		immediate	
-	6	5	5	-	16	
	LB/LH/LW/LBU/LHU/LL	base	$\operatorname{dest}$		offset	
	SB/SH/SW/SC	base	src		offset	

Load and store instructions transfer a value between the registers and memory and are encoded with the I-type format. The effective address is obtained by adding register rs to the sign-extended immediate. Loads place a value in register rt. Stores write the value in register rt to memory.

The LW and SW instructions load and store 32-bit register values respectively. The LH instruction loads a 16-bit value from memory and sign extends this to 32-bits before storing into register rt. The LHU instruction zero-extends the 16-bit memory value. Similarly LB and LBU load sign and zero-extended 8-bit values into register rt respectively. The SH instruction writes the low-order 16 bits of register rt to memory, while SB writes the low-order 8 bits.

The effective address must be naturally aligned for each data type (i.e., on a four-byte boundary for 32-bit loads/stores and a two-byte boundary for 16-bit loads/store). If not, an address exception (AdEL/AdES) is generated.

The load linked (LL) and store conditional (SC) instructions are used as primitives to implement atomic read-modify-write operations for multiprocessor synchronization. The LL instruction performs a standard load from the effective address (base+offset), but as a side effect the instruction should set a programmer invisible link address register. If for any reason atomicity is violated, then the link address register will be cleared. When the processor executes the SC instruction first, it first verifies that the link address register is still valid. If link address register is valid then the SC executes as a standard SW instruction except that the src register is overwritten with a one to indicate success. If the link address register is invalid, the then SW instruction overwrites the src register with a zero to indicate failure. There are several reasons why atomicity might be violated. If the processor takes an exception after an LL instruction but before the corresponding SC instruction is executed then the link address register will be cleared. In a multi-processor system, if a different processor uses a SC instruction to write the same location then the link address register will also be cleared.

#### **Computational Instructions**

Computational instructions are either encoded as register-immediate operations using the I-type format or as register-register operations using the R-type format. The destination is register rt for register-immediate instructions and rd for register-register instructions. There are only eight register-immediate computational instructions.

31 26	$25 \ 21$	$20 \ 16$	15 0
opcode	rs	rt	immediate
6	5	5	16
ADDI/ADDIU/SLTI/SLTIU	$\operatorname{src}$	$\mathbf{dest}$	sign-extended immediate
ANDI/ORI/XORI/LUI	src	$\operatorname{dest}$	zero-extended immediate

ADDI and ADDIU add the sign-extended 16-bit immediate to register rs. The only difference between ADD and ADDIU is that ADDI generates an arithmetic overflow exception if the signed result would overflow 32 bits. SLTI (set less than immediate) places a 1 in the register rt if register rs is strictly less than the sign-extended immediate when both are treated as signed 32-bit numbers, else a 0 is written to rt. SLTIU is similar but compares the values as unsigned 32-bit numbers. [NOTE: Both ADDIU and SLTIU sign-extend the immediate, even though they operate on unsigned numbers.]

ANDI, ORI, XORI are logical operations that perform bit-wise AND, OR, and XOR on register rs and the zero-extended 16-bit immediate and place the result in rt.

LUI (load upper immediate) is used to build 32-bit immediates. It shifts the 16-bit immediate into the high-order 16-bits, shifting in 16 zeros in the low order bits, then places the result in register *rt*. The *rs* field must be zero.

# [ NOTE: Shifts by immediate values are encoded in the R-type format using the *shamt* field. ]

Arithmetic R-type operations are encoded with a zero value (SPECIAL) in the major opcode. All operations read the *rs* and *rt* registers as source operands and write the result into register *rd*. The 6-bit *funct* field selects the operation type from ADD, ADDU, SUB, SUBU, SLT, SLTU, AND, OR, XOR, and NOR.

31	26	25 21	20 16	15 11	10 6	5 0
opcoo	le	rs	rt	rd	shamt	funct
6		5	5	5	5	6
SPECIA	L=0	src1	src2	$\mathbf{dest}$	0	ADD/ADDU/SUB/SUBU
SPECIA	L=0	src1	src2	$\mathbf{dest}$	0	SLT/SLTU
SPECIA	L=0	src1	src2	$\operatorname{dest}$	0	AND/OR/XOR/NOR

ADD and SUB perform add and subtract respectively, but signal an arithmetic overflow if the result would overflow the signed 32-bit destination. ADDU and SUBU are identical to ADD/SUB except no trap is created on overflow. SLT and SLTU performed signed and unsigned compares respectively, writing 1 to rd if rs < rt, 0 otherwise. AND, OR, XOR, and NOR perform bitwise logical operations. [NOTE: NOR rd, rx, rx performs a logical inversion (NOT) of register rx.]

Shift instructions are also encoded using R-type instructions with the SPECIAL major opcode. The operand that is shifted is always register rt. Shifts by constant values

(SLL/SRL/SRA) have the shift amount encoded in the *shamt* field. Shifts by variable values (SLLV/SRLV/SRAV) take the shift amount from the bottom five bits of register *rs*. SLL/SLLV are logical left shifts, with zeros shifted into the least significant bits. SRL/SRLV are logical right shifts with zeros shifted into the most significant bits. SRA/SRAV are arithmetic right shifts which shift in copies of the original sign bit into the most significant bits.

31 26	$25 \ 21$	$20 \ 16$	$15 \ 11$	10 6	5 0
opcode	rs	rt	rd	shamt	funct
6	5	5	5	5	6
SPECIAL=0	0	$\operatorname{src}$	$\mathbf{dest}$	$\mathbf{shift}$	SLL/SRL/SRA
SPECIAL=0	$\mathbf{shift}$	$\operatorname{src}$	$\mathbf{dest}$	0	SLLV/SRLV/SRAV

Multiply and divide instructions target the hi and lo registers and are encoded as R-type instructions under the SPECIAL major opcode. These instructions are fully interlocked in hardware. Multiply instructions take two 32-bit operands in registers rs and rt and store their 64-bit product in registers hi and lo. MULT performs a signed multiplication while MULTU performs an unsigned multiplication. DIV and DIVU perform signed and unsigned divides of register rs by register rt placing the quotient in lo and the remainder in hi. Divides by zero do not cause a trap. A software check can be inserted if required.

31	26	$25 \ 21$	$20 \ 16$	$15 \ 11$	10	6	5 0
opcode		rs	rt	rd	shan	nt	funct
6		5	5	5	5		6
SPECIAL	=0	src1	src2	0	0		MULT/MULTU/DIV/DIVU
SPECIAL	=0	0	0	$\mathbf{dest}$	0		MFHI/MFLO
SPECIAL	=0	$\mathbf{src}$	0	0	0		MTHI/MTLO

The values calculated by a multiply or divide instruction are retrieved from the hi and lo registers using the MFHI (move from hi) and MFLO (move from lo) instructions, which write register rd. MTHI (move to hi) and MTLO (move to lo) instructions are also provided to allow the multiply registers to be written with the value in register rs (these instructions are used to restore user state after a context swap).

#### Jump and Branch Instructions

Jumps and branches can change the control flow of a program. Unlike the MIPS32 ISA, the SMIPS ISA does not have a programmer visible branch delay slot.

Absolute jumps (J) and jump and link (JAL) instructions use the J-type format. The 26-bit jump target is concatenated to the high order four bits of the program counter of the delay slot, then shifted left two bits to form the jump target address (using Verilog notation, the target address is {pc\_plus4[31:28],target[25:0],2'b0}. JAL stores the address of the instruction following the jump (PC+4) into register r31.

31	26	25		0
opc	ode		jump target	
6	3		26	
J/JAL			offset	

The indirect jump instructions, JR (jump register) and JALR (jump and link register), use the R-type encoding under a SPECIAL major opcode and jump to the address contained in register *rs.* JALR writes the link address into register *rd*.

31	26	$25 \ 21$	$20 \ 16$	$15 \ 11$	10 6	50
opcod	е	rs	rt	rd	shamt	funct
6		5	5	5	5	6
SPECIAL=0		$\operatorname{src}$	0	0	0	$_{\rm JR}$
SPECIAL	L=0	src	0	$\operatorname{dest}$	0	JALR

All branch instructions use the I-type encoding. The 16-bit immediate is sign-extended, shifted left two bits, then added to the address of the instruction in the delay slot (PC+4) to give the branch target address.

31	26	$25 \ 21$	20		16	15		0
opcode		rs		$\mathbf{rt}$			immediate	
6		5		5			16	
BEQ/BN	$\mathbf{E}$	src1		$\operatorname{src2}$			offset	
BLEZ/BG	$\mathbf{TZ}$	$\mathbf{src}$		0			offset	
REGIMN	1	src	BL'	TZ/BG	$\mathbf{EZ}$		offset	

BEQ and BNE compare two registers and take the branch if they are equal or unequal respectively. BLEZ and BGTZ compare one register against zero, and branch if it is less than or equal to zero, or greater than zero, respectively. BLTZ and BGEZ examine the sign bit of the register *rs* and branch if it is negative or positive respectively.

#### System Coprocessor Instructions

The MTCO and MFCO instructions access the control registers in coprocessor 0, transferring a value from/to the coprocessor register specified in the rd field to/from the CPU register specified in the rt field. It is important to note that the coprocessor register is always in the rd field and the CPU register is always in the rt field regardless of which register is the source and which is the destination.

31	26	$25 \ 21$	$20 \ 16$	15	11	10	6	5	0
opc	ode	rs	rt	rd		sha	mt	fun	$\mathbf{ct}$
(	6	5	5	5		5		6	
CC	)P0	$\mathbf{MF}$	$\mathbf{dest}$	cop0si	c	0		0	
CC	)P0	$\mathbf{MT}$	$\operatorname{src}$	cop0dest		0		0	
CC	)P0	CO	0	0		0		ERI	$\mathbf{T}$

The restore from exception instruction, ERET, returns to the interrupted instruction at the completion of interrupt or exception processing. An ERET instruction should pop the top value of the interrupt and kernel/user status register stack, restoring the previous values.

## **Coprocessor 2 Instructions**

Coprocessor 2 is reserved for an implementation defined hardware unit. The MTC2 and MFC2 instructions access the registers in coprocessor 2, transferring a value from/to the coprocessor register specified in the rd field to/from the CPU register specified in the rt field. The CTC2 and CFC2 instructions serve a similar process. The Coprocessor 2 implementation is free to handle the coprocessor register specifiers in MTC2/MFC2 and CTC2/CFC2 in any way it wishes.

	31	26	$25 \ 21$	20 16	15	11	10	6	5	0
Γ	opco	ode	rs	rt	rd	l	sha	$\mathbf{mt}$	fur	nct
	6		5	5	5		5		6	3
	CO	P2	$\mathbf{MF}$	$\mathbf{dest}$	cop2	$\operatorname{src}$	0		(	)
	CO	P2	$\mathbf{MT}$	src	cop2	$\mathbf{lest}$	0		(	)
	CO	P2	$\mathbf{CF}$	$\mathbf{dest}$	cop2	$\operatorname{src}$	0		(	)
	CO	P2	$\mathbf{CT}$	$\operatorname{src}$	cop2d	$\mathbf{lest}$	0		(	)

The LWC2 and SWC2 instructions transfer values between memory and the coprocessor registers. Note that although *cop2dest* and *cop2src* fields are coprocessor register specifiers, the ISA does not define how these correspond to the coprocessor register specifiers in other Coprocessor 2 instructions.

31	26	$25\ 21$	20	16	15		0
opo	code	rs	r	t		immediate	
	6	5	Ę	5		16	
LW	C2	base	cop2	$\mathbf{dest}$		offset	
SW	/C2	base	cop	2src		offset	

The COP2 instruction is the primary mechanism by which a programmer can specify instruction bits to control Coprocessor 2. The 25-bit *copfunc* field is compeletely implementation dependent.

31 26	25 25	24		0
opcode			coprocessor function	
6	1		25	
COP2	C0		$\operatorname{copfunc}$	

### **Special Instructions**

The SYSCALL and BREAK instructions are useful for implementing operating systems and debuggers. The SYNC instruction can be necessary to guarantee strong load/store ordering in modern multi-processors with sophisticated memory systems.

The SYSCALL and BREAK instructions cause and immediate syscall or break exception. To access the code field for use as a software parameter, the exception handler must load the memory location containing the syscall instruction.

31 26	25 - 6	5 0		
opcode	0	funct		
6	20	6		
SPECIAL=0	$\operatorname{code}$	SYSCALL		
SPECIAL=0	code	BREAK		
SPECIAL=0	0	SYNC		

The SYNC instruction is used to order loads and stores. All loads and stores before the SYNC instruction must be visible to all other processors in the system before any of the loads and stores following the SYNC instruction are visible.

## A.5.3 SMIPS Variants

The SMIPS specification defines three SMIPS subsets: SMIPSv1, SMIPSv2, and SMIPSv3. SMIPSv1 includes the following five instructions: ADDIU, BNE, LW, SW, and MTC0. The tohost register is the only implemented system coprocessor register. SMIPSv2 includes all of the simple arithmetic instructions except for those which throw overflow exceptions. It does not include multiply or divide instructions. SMIPSv2 only supports word loads and stores. All jumps and branches are supported. Neither SMIPSv1 or SMIPSv2 support exceptions, interrupts, or most of the system coprocessor. SMIPSv3 is the full SMIPS ISA and includes everything described in this document except for Coprocessor 2 instructions. Table A.7 notes which instructions are supported in each variant.

#### A.5.4 Unimplemented Instructions

Several instructions in the MIPS32 instruction set are not supported by the SMIPS. These instructions should cause a reserved instruction exception (RI) and can be emulated in software by an exception handler.

The misaligned load/store instructions, Load Word Left (LWL), Load Word Right (LWR), Store Word Left (SWL), and Store Word Right (SWR), are not implemented. A trap handler can emulate the misaligned access. Compilers for SMIPS should avoid generating these instructions, and should instead generate code to perform the misaligned access using multiple aligned accesses.

The MIPS32 trap instructions, TGE, TGEU, TLT, TLTU, TEQ, TNE, TGEI, TGEIU, TLTI, TLTIU, TEQI, TNEI, are not implemented. The illegal instruction trap handler can perform the comparison and if the condition is met jump to the appropriate exception routine, otherwise resume user mode execution after the trap instruction. Alternatively, these instructions may be synthesized by the assembler, or simply avoided by the compiler.

The floating point coprocessor (COP1) is not supported. All MIPS32 coprocessor 1 instructions are trapped to allow emulation of floating-point. For higher performance, compilers for SMIPS could directly generate calls to software floating point code libraries rather than emit coprocessor instructions that will cause traps, though this will require modifying the standard MIPS calling convention.

Branch likely and branch and link instructions are not implemented and cannot be emulated so they should be avoided by compilers for SMIPS.

## A.6 Instruction listing for SMIPS

31	26	25	21	20	16	15	11	10	6	5	0	
opco	ode		rs	r	t	r	d	sha	mt	f	unct	R-type
opco	ode		rs	r	t	immediate			diate			I-type
opco	ode			target						J-type		

Load and Store Instructions

0	100000	1	1 4	· 1 m	TD = (C + ( ))
v3	100000	base	dest	signed offset	LB rt, offset(rs)
v3	100001	base	dest	signed offset	LH rt, offset(rs)
v1	100011	base	dest	signed offset	LW rt, $offset(rs)$
v3	100100	base	dest	signed offset	LBU rt, offset(rs)
v3	100101	base	dest	signed offset	LHU rt, offset(rs)
v3	110000	base	dest	signed offset	LL rt, $offset(rs)$
v3	101000	base	src	signed offset	SB rt, offset(rs)
v3	101001	base	src	signed offset	SH rt, $offset(rs)$
v1	101011	base	src	signed offset	SW rt, offset(rs)
v3	111000	base	src	signed offset	SC rt, offset(rs)

I-Type Computational Instructions

		01	1		
v3	001000	src	dest	signed immediate	ADDI rt, rs, signed-imm.
v1	001001	src	dest	signed immediate	ADDIU rt, rs, signed-imm.
v2	001010	src	dest	signed immediate	SLTI rt, rs, signed-imm.
v2	001011	src	dest	signed immediate	SLTIU rt, rs, signed-imm.
v2	001100	src	dest	zero-ext. immediate	ANDI rt, rs, zero-ext-imm.
v2	001101	src	dest	zero-ext. immediate	ORI rt, rs, zero-ext-imm.
v2	001110	src	dest	zero-ext. immediate	XORI rt, rs, zero-ext-imm.
v2	001111	00000	dest	zero-ext. immediate	LUI rt, zero-ext-imm.

**R-Type** Computational Instructions

v2	000000	00000	src	dest	shamt	000000	SLL rd, rt, shamt						
v2	000000	00000	src	dest	shamt	000010	SRL rd, rt, shamt						
v2	000000	00000	src	dest	shamt	000011	SRA rd, rt, shamt						
v2	000000	rshamt	src	dest	00000	000100	SLLV rd, rt, shamt						
v2	000000	rshamt	src	dest	00000	000110	SRLV rd, rt, shamt						
v2	000000	rshamt	src	dest	00000	000111	SRAV rd, rt, shamt						
v3	000000	src1	src2	dest	00000	100000	ADD rd, rt, shamt						
v2	000000	src1	src2	dest	00000	100001	ADDU rd, rt, shamt						
v3	000000	src1	src2	dest	00000	100010	SUB rd, rt, shamt						
v2	000000	src1	src2	dest	00000	100011	SUBU rd, rt, shamt						
v2	000000	src1	src2	dest	00000	100100	AND rd, rt, shamt						
v2	000000	src1	src2	dest	00000	100101	OR rd, rt, shamt						
v2	000000	src1	src2	dest	00000	100110	XOR rd, rt, shamt						
v2	000000	src1	src2	dest	00000	100111	NOR rd, rt, shamt						
v2	000000	src1	src2	dest	00000	101010	SLT rd, rt, shamt						
v2	000000	src1	src2	dest	00000	101011	SLTU rd, rt, shamt						

## SMIPS-17

			······································				
v3	000000	00000	00000	dest	00000	010000	MFHI rd
v3	000000	rs	00000	00000	00000	010001	MTHI rs
v3	000000	00000	00000	dest	00000	010010	MFLO rd
v3	000000	rs	00000	00000	00000	010011	MTLO rs
v3	000000	src1	src2	00000	00000	011000	MULT rs, rt
v3	000000	src1	src2	00000	00000	011001	MULTU rs, rt
v3	000000	src1	src2	00000	00000	011010	DIV rs, rt
v3	000000	src1	src2	00000	00000	011011	DIVU rs, rt

Multiply/Divide Instructions

## Jump and Branch Instructions

v2	000010			target			J target
v2	000011			target			JAL target
v2	000000	src	00000	00000	00000	001000	JR rs
v2	000000	src	00000	dest	00000	JALR rd, rs	
v2	000100	src1 src2 signed offset					BEQ rs, rt, offset
v2	000101	src1	src2		signed offset		BNE rs, rt, offset
v2	000110	src	00000		signed offset		BLEZ rs, rt, offset
v2	000111	src	00000		signed offset	BGTZ rs, rt, offset	
v2	000001	src	00000	signed offset			BLTZ rs, rt, offset
v2	000001	src	00001		signed offset		BGEZ rs, rt, offset

System Coprocessor (COP0) Instructions

v2	010000	00000	dest	cop0src	00000	000000	MFC0 rt, rd
v2	010000	00100	$\operatorname{src}$	cop0dest	00000	000000	MTC0 rt, rd
v3	010000	10000	00000	00000	00000	011000	ERET

## Coprocessor 2 (COP2) Instructions

		1	(	/			
_	010010	00000	dest	cop2src	00000	000000	MFC2 rt, rd
_	010010	00100	src	cop2dest	00000	000000	MTC2 rt, rd
_	010010	00010	dest	cop2src	00000	000000	CFC2 rt, rd
_	010010	00110	src	cop2dest	00000	000000	CTC2 rt, rd
_	110010	base	cop2dest		signed offset		LWC2 rt, offset(rs)
_	111010	base	cop2src		signed offset		SWC2 rt, offset(rs)
—	010010	1				copfunc	COP2 copfunc

v3	000000	00000	00000	00000	00000	001100	SYSCALL
v3	000000	00000	00000	00000	00000	001101	BREAK
v3	000000	00000	00000	00000	00000	001111	SYNC

# Bibliography

- [1] Bluespec, Inc. Bluespec<sup>TM</sup> SystemVerilog Version Reference Guide, 2010.
- [2] Bluespec, Inc. Bluespec<sup>TM</sup> SystemVerilog Version User Guide, 2010.
- [3] J. L. Hennessy and D. Patterson. Computer Organization and Design: The Hardware/Software Interface (Second Edition). Morgan Kaufmann, February 1997. ISBN 1558604286.
- [4] J. L. Hennessy and D. A. Patterson. Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach (Fifth Edition). Morgan Kaufman, September 2011.
- [5] M. T. Inc. *MIPS32 Architecture for Programmers*. 2002. http://www.mips.com/publications/processor\_architecture.html.
- [6] G. Kane and J. Heinrich. MIPS RISC Architecture (2nd edition). Prentice Hall, September 1991. ISBN 0135904722.
- [7] R. S. Nikhil and K. R. Czeck. BSV by Example. CreateSpace, December 2010. ISBN-10: 1456418467; ISBN-13: 978-1456418465; avail: Amazon.com.
- [8] D. Sweetman. See MIPS Run. Morgan Kaufmann, April 1999. ISBN 1558604103.